

## The Gospel Mystery of Sanctification

Walter Marshall

- I. That we may acceptably perform the duties of holiness and righteousness required in the law, our first work is to learn the powerful and effectual means by which we may attain to so great an end.
- A. First, it acquaints you with the great end for which all those means are designed, that are the principal subject to be here treated of. The scope of all is to teach you how you may attain to that practice and manner of life which we call holiness, righteousness, or godliness, obedience, true religion; and which God requires of us in the law, particularly in the moral law, summed up in the Ten Commandments, and more briefly in those two great commandments of love to God and our neighbor and more largely explained throughout the Holy Scriptures.
1. *[Matthew 22:37,39]- Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. And the second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.*
  2. *[Romans 7:14]- For we know that the law is spiritual: but I am carnal, sold under sin.*
  3. *[Psalm 119:96]- I have seen an end of all perfection: but thy commandment is exceeding broad.*
  4. *[James 2:10]- For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all.*
  5. *[Matthew 7:12]- Therefore all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them: for this is the law and the prophets.*
  6. *[Romans 7:12]- Wherefore the law is holy, and the commandment holy, and just, and good.*
  7. *[1 Corinthians 13:13]- And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity.*
  8. *[Romans 2:14-15]- For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, having not the law, are a law unto themselves: Which shew the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another;)*
  9. *[Matthew 5:19]- Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven: but whosoever shall do and teach them, the same shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven.*
  10. *[Luke 10:27-28]- And he answering said, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy strength, and with all thy mind; and thy neighbour as thyself. And he said unto him, Thou hast answered right: this do, and thou shalt live.*
  11. *[Matthew 22:36-40]- Master, which is the great commandment in the law? Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. This is the first and great commandment. And the second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets.*
  12. *[Mark 12:31]- And the second is like, namely this, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. There is none other commandment greater than these.*
- B. The necessity of learning the powerful and *effectual means* by which this great excellent end may be accomplished, and of making this first work to be done, before we can expect success in any attempt for the attainment of it.

1. We are all, by nature, void of all strength and ability to perform acceptably that holiness and righteousness which the law requires, and are dead in trespasses and sins, and children of wrath, by the sin of our first father, Adam, as the Scripture witnesses
  - a. *[Romans 5:12,15,18,19]- Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned: But not as the offence, so also is the free gift. For if through the offence of one many be dead, much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, which is by one man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many. Therefore as by the offence of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men unto justification of life. For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous.*
  - b. *[Ephesians 2:1-3]- And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.*
  - c. *[Romans 8:7-8]- Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.*
  
2. Those that doubt of, or deny the doctrine of original sin may all of them know concerning themselves (if their consciences are not blind) that the exact justice of God is against them and they are under the curse of God and sentence of death for their actual sins, if God should enter into judgment with them
  - a. *[Romans 1:32]- Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them.*
  - b. *[Romans 2:2]- But we are sure that the judgment of God is according to truth against them which commit such things.*
  - c. *[Romans 3:9]- What then? are we better than they? No, in no wise: for we have before proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin;*
  - d. *[Galatians 3:10]- For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.*
  
3. Though heathens might know much of the work of the law by the common light of natural reason and understanding, yet the effectual means of performance cannot be discovered by that light, and therefore are wholly to be learned by the teaching of supernatural revelation.
  - a. *[Romans 2:14]- For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, having not the law, are a law unto themselves:*
  - b. *[Genesis 2:17]- But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.*
  
4. Sanctification, by which our hearts and lives are conformed to the law, is a grace of God communicated to us by means, as well as justification, and by means of teaching, and learning something that we cannot see without the Word. There are several things pertaining to life and godliness that are given through knowledge. There is a form of doctrine made use of by God to make people free from sin, and servants of righteousness. And there are several pieces of the whole armor of God necessary to be known and put on, that we may stand against sin and Satan in the evil day. Shall we slight and overlook the way of sanctification, when the learning the way of justification has been accounted worth so many elaborate treatises?

- a. *[Acts 26:17-18]- Delivering thee from the people, and from the Gentiles, unto whom now I send thee, To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.*
  - b. *[2 Peter 1:2-3]- Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord, According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue:*
  - c. *[Romans 6:17-18]- But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin, but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you. Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness.*
  - d. *[Ephesians 6:13]- Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand.*
5. God has given, in the Holy Scriptures by His inspiration, plentiful instruction in righteousness, ‘that we may be thoroughly furnished for every good work’, especially since ‘the dayspring from on high has visited us,’ by the appearance of the Lord Jesus Christ, ‘to guide our feet in the way of peace’. If God condescend to us so very low, to teach us this way in the Scriptures and by Christ, it must needs be greatly necessary for us to sit down at His feet and learn it.
- a. *[2 Timothy 3:16-17]- All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.*
  - b. *[Luke 1:78-79]- Through the tender mercy of our God; whereby the dayspring from on high hath visited us, To give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace.*
6. The way of attaining to godliness is so far from being known without learning out of the Holy Scriptures that, when it is here plainly revealed, we cannot learn it so easily as the duties of the law, which was known in part by the light of nature, and therefore the more easily assented to. It is the way by which the dead are brought to live to God; and therefore doubtless it is far above all the thoughts and conjectures of human wisdom.
- a. *[1 Corinthians 1:19, 21]- For it is written, I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and will bring to nothing the understanding of the prudent. For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.*
  - b. *[1 Corinthians 2:14]- But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.*
  - c. *[1 Timothy 3:16]- And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.*
  - d. *[Psalm 119:5,33]- O that my ways were directed to keep thy statutes! O that my ways were directed to keep thy statutes!*
  - e. *[Psalm 143:10]- Teach me to do thy will; for thou art my God: thy spirit is good; lead me into the land of uprightness.*
  - f. *[2 Thessalonians 3:5]- And the Lord direct your hearts into the love of God, and into the patient waiting for Christ.*
7. The certain knowledge of these powerful and effectual means is of the greatest importance and necessity for our establishment in the true faith and avoiding errors contrary to them, for we

cannot rationally doubt that the moral duties of love to God and our neighbor are absolutely necessary to true religion, so that it cannot submit without them.

- a. ***[1 Timothy 6:3]- If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to wholesome words, even the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the doctrine which is according to godliness;***
- b. ***[John 7:17-18]- If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself. He that speaketh of himself seeketh his own glory: but he that seeketh his glory that sent him, the same is true, and no unrighteousness is in him.***
- c. ***[Matthew 7:15-16]- Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?***

8. It is also of great importance and necessity for our establishment in holy practice; for we cannot apply ourselves to the practice of holiness with hope of success, except we have some faith concerning the divine assistance, which we have no ground to expect, if we do not use such means as God has appointed to work by. 'God meets them that remember Him in His own ways'; and 'makes a breach on them that do not seek Him after the due order'. He has chosen and ordained such means of sanctification and salvation as are for His own glory, and those only He blesses to us; and He crowns no man that strives, unless he strives lawfully.

- a. ***[Isaiah 64:5]- Thou meetest him that rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, those that remember thee in thy ways: behold, thou art wroth; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we shall be saved.***
- b. ***[1 Chronicles 15:13]- For because ye did it not at the first, the LORD our God made a breach upon us, for that we sought him not after the due order.***
- c. ***[2 Timothy 2:5]- And if a man also strive for masteries, yet is he not crowned, except he strive lawfully.***

9. Experience shows plentifully, both of heathens and Christians, how pernicious ignorance, or mistaking of those effectual means, is to a holy practice.

- a. Many Christians content themselves with external performances, because they never knew how they might attain to spiritual service.
- b. Many reject the way of holiness as austere and unpleasant, because they did not know how to cut off a right hand, or pluck out a right eye, without intolerable pain; whereas they would find 'the ways of wisdom' (if they knew them) 'to be ways of pleasantness, and all her paths to be peace'.

***1.) [Proverbs 3:17]- Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.***

- c. Many others set on the practice of holiness with a fervent zeal, and run very fast; but do not tread a step in the right way; and, finding themselves frequently disappointed and overcome by their lusts, they at last give over the work and turn to wallow again in the mire.

***1.) [Matthew 7:14]- Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.***

- d. Some of the more ignorant zealots do inhumanly macerate their bodies with fasting and other austerities, to kill their lusts; and, when they see their lusts are still too hard for them, they fall into despair and are driven, by horror of conscience, to make away with themselves wickedly, to the scandal of religion.

II. *Several endowments and qualifications are necessary to enable us for the immediate practice of the law. Particularly we must have an inclination and propensity of our hearts thereunto; and therefore we must be well persuaded of our reconciliation with God, and of our future enjoyment of the everlasting heavenly happenings, and of sufficient strength both to will and perform all duties acceptably, until we come to the enjoyment of that happiness.*

A. In the first place, I assert that *an inclination and propensity of heart to the duties of the law* is necessary to frame and enable us for the immediate practice of them. And I mean not such a blind propensity as inanimate creatures and brutes have to their natural operations, but such a one as is fitting for intelligent creatures, by which they are, by the conduct of reason, prone and bent to approve and choose their duty, and averse to the practice of sin.

1. The duties of the law are of such a nature that they cannot possibly be performed while there is wholly an aversion or mere indifferency of the heart to the performance of them, and no good inclination and propensity towards the practice of them, because the chief of all the commandments is to love the Lord with our whole heart, might and soul; to love everything that is in Him; to love His will, and all His ways, and to like them as good.

a. *[Psalm 40:8]- I delight to do thy will, O my God: yea, thy law is within my heart.*

b. *[Job 23:12]- Neither have I gone back from the commandment of his lips; I have esteemed the words of his mouth more than my necessary food.*

c. *[Psalm 63:1]- O God, thou art my God; early will I seek thee: my soul thirsteth for thee, my flesh longeth for thee in a dry and thirsty land, where no water is;*

d. *[Psalm 119:20]- My soul breaketh for the longing that it hath unto thy judgments at all times.*

e. *[Psalm 19:10]- More to be desired are they than gold, yea, than much fine gold: sweeter also than honey and the honeycomb.*

f. *[Galatians 5:17]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*

g. *[Psalm 36:4]- He deviseth mischief upon his bed; he setteth himself in a way that is not good; he abhorreth not evil.*

h. *[1 Timothy 1:5]- Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned:*

2. The image of God (in which God, according to His infinite wisdom, judged it suitable to frame the first Adam in righteousness, and true holiness, and uprightness), consists in an actual bent and propensity of heart to the practice of holiness - not in a mere power of will to choose good or evil; for this; in itself, is neither holy nor unholy, but only a groundwork, on which either the image of God or of Satan may be drawn; nor in an indifferency of propensity to the choice of sin or duty; for this is a wicked disposition in an intelligent creature that knows his duty, and fits us only to halt between God and Baal.

a. *[Genesis 1:27]- So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.*

b. *[Ephesians 4:24]- And that ye put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.*

c. *[Ecclesiastes 7:29]- Lo, this only have I found, that God hath made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions.*

d. *[Luke 1:35]- And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.*

3. Original corruption (by which we are dead to God and godliness from the birth, and made willing slaves to the performance of all actual sins until the Son of God makes us free) consists in a propensity and inclination of the heart to sin, and averseness to holiness. Without this propensity to sin, what can that 'law of sin in our members' be, 'that wars against the law of our mind, and leads us captive to the service of sin'?
  - a. *[Romans 7:23]- But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members.*
  - b. *[Hosea 5:4]- They will not frame their doings to turn unto their God: for the spirit of whoredoms is in the midst of them, and they have not known the LORD.*
  - c. *[Matthew 12:33]- Either make the tree good, and his fruit good; or else make the tree corrupt, and his fruit corrupt: for the tree is known by his fruit.*
  - d. *[Job 15:16]- How much more abominable and filthy is man, which drinketh iniquity like water?*
  - e. *[Romans 8:7]- Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.*
  
4. God restores His people to holiness, by giving to them 'a new heart, and a new spirit, and taking away the heart of stone out of their flesh, and giving them a heart of flesh'; and He circumcises their heart to love Him with their whole heart and soul. And He requires that we should be transformed 'in the renewing of our mind, that we may prove what is His acceptable will'.
  - a. *[Ezekiel 36:26-27]- A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh. And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.*
  - b. *[Romans 12:2]- And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.*
  - c. *[Psalm 51:10]- Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me.*
  - d. *[Psalm 119:36]- Incline my heart unto thy testimonies, and not to covetousness.*
  
- B.** The second endowment necessary to enable us for the immediate practice of holiness, and concurring with the two other that follow to work in us a rational propensity to this practice, *is that we be well persuaded of our reconciliation with God.* We must reckon that the breach of enmity, which sin has made between God and us, is made up by a firm reconciliation to His love and favor.
  1. *[Romans 4:5-7]- But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness. Even as David also describeth the blessedness of the man, unto whom God imputeth righteousness without works, Saying, Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered.*
  2. When the first Adam was framed for the practice of holiness at his creation, he was highly in the favor of God, and had no sin imputed to him, and he was accounted righteous in the sight of God, according to his present state, because he was made upright according to God's image. And there is no reason to doubt but that these qualifications were his advantage for a holy practice, and the wisdom of God judged them good for that end and, as soon as he lost them, he became dead in sin. The second Adam also, in our nature, was the beloved of the Father, accounted righteous in the sight of God, without the imputation of any sin to Him, except what His office was to bear on the behalf of others.
  3. Those that know their natural deadness under the power of sin and Satan are fully convinced that, if God leave them to their own hearts, they can do nothing but sin; and that they can do no good work, except it please God, of His great love and mercy, to work it in them.

- a. *[John 8:36]- If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed.*
  - b. *[Philippians 2:13]- For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure.*
  - c. *[Romans 8:7-8]- Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.*
  - d. *[Genesis 2:17]- But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.*
  - e. *[Galatians 3:13-14]- Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:*
  - f. *[Romans 6:14]- For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.*
  - g. *[Ezekiel 33:10]- Therefore, O thou son of man, speak unto the house of Israel; Thus ye speak, saying, If our transgressions and our sins be upon us, and we pine away in them, how should we then live?*
4. The nature of the duties of the law is such as requires an apprehension of our reconciliation with God, and His hearty love and favor towards us for the doing of them. The great duty is love to God with our whole heart, and not such a contemplative love as philosophers may have to the object of sciences, which they are concerned in no further than to please their fancies in the knowledge of them; but a practical love, by which we are willing that God should be absolute Lord and Governor of us and all the world, to dispose of us and all others according to His will, as to our temporal and everlasting condition, and that He should be the only portion and happiness of all those that are happy; a love by which we like everything in Him as He is our Lord - His justice as well as any other attribute - without wishing or desiring that He were better than He is; and by which we desire that His will may be done on us and all others, whether prosperity or adversity, life or death; and by which we can heartily praise Him for all things, and delight in our obedience to Him, in doing His will, though we suffer that which is ever so grievous to us, even present death.
- a. *[1 John 4:18-19]- There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love. We love him, because he first loved us.*
  - b. *[James 2:19]- Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.*
5. Our conscience must of necessity be first purged from dead works, that we may serve the living God. And this is done by actual remission of sin, procured by the blood of Christ, and manifested to our consciences, as appeared by Christ's dying for this end.
- a. *[Hebrews 9:14-15]- How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?*
  - b. *[Hebrews 10:1-2,4,14,17,22]- For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect. For then would they not have ceased to be offered? because that the worshippers once purged should have had no more conscience of sins. For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and of goats should take away sins. For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified. And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more. Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.*
  - c. *[1 Timothy 1:5]- Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned:*

- d. *[Psalm 51:14-15]- Deliver me from bloodguiltiness, O God, thou God of my salvation: and my tongue shall sing aloud of thy righteousness. O Lord, open thou my lips; and my mouth shall shew forth thy praise.*
  - e. *"I have often considered by what manner of working any sin could effectually destroy the whole image of God in the first Adam, and I conclude it was by working first an evil guilty conscience in him, by which he judged that the just God was against him and cursed him for that one sin."*
  - f. *[Genesis 3:8,10]- And they heard the voice of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God amongst the trees of the garden. And he said, I heard thy voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked; and I hid myself.*
  - g. *[Job 1:5]- And it was so, when the days of their feasting were gone about, that Job sent and sanctified them, and rose up early in the morning, and offered burnt offerings according to the number of them all: for Job said, It may be that my sons have sinned, and cursed God in their hearts. Thus did Job continually.*
6. God has abundantly discovered to us in His Word that His method in bringing men from sin to holiness of life is first, to make them know that He loves them and that their sins are blotted out. When He gave the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai, He first discovered Himself to be their God that had given them a sure pledge of His salvation by their delivery from Egypt, in the preface.
- a. *[Exodus 20:2]- I am the LORD thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.*
  - b. *[Romans 4:5,11]- But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness. And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all them that believe, though they be not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed unto them also:*
  - c. *[Hebrews 9:10,13,14,22]- Which stood only in meats and drinks, and divers washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation. For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh: How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.*
  - d. *[Hebrews 10:10,14,18]- By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified. Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.*
  - e. *[Leviticus 5:8]- And he shall bring them unto the priest, who shall offer that which is for the sin offering first, and wring off his head from his neck, but shall not divide it asunder:*
  - f. *[Leviticus 16:3,11]- Thus shall Aaron come into the holy place: with a young bullock for a sin offering, and a ram for a burnt offering. And Aaron shall bring the bullock of the sin offering, which is for himself, and shall make an atonement for himself, and for his house, and shall kill the bullock of the sin offering which is for himself:*
  - g. *[Leviticus 16:22,34]- And the goat shall bear upon him all their iniquities unto a land not inhabited: and he shall let go the goat in the wilderness. And this shall be an everlasting statute unto you, to make an atonement for the children of Israel for all their sins once a year. And he did as the LORD commanded Moses.*
  - h. *[Ephesians 4:32]- And be ye kind one to another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ's sake hath forgiven you.*



- i. *[Ephesians 5:1-2]- Be ye therefore followers of God, as dear children; And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savour.*
  - j. *[1 John 2:12,15]- I write unto you, little children, because your sins are forgiven you for his name's sake. Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him.*
- C. The third endowment necessary to enable us for the practice of holiness, without which a persuasion of our reconciliation with God would be of little efficacy to work in us a rational propensity to it, *is that we be persuaded of our future enjoyment of the everlasting heavenly happiness.* This must precede our holy practice, as a cause disposing and alluring us to it.
1. The nature of the duties of the law is such that they cannot be sincerely and universally practiced without this endowment. That this endowment must be present in us is sufficiently proved already by all that I have said concerning the necessity of the persuasion of our firm reconciliation with God by our justification, to prepare us for this practice; because that includes a persuasion of this future happiness, or else it is of little worth.
  2. The sure hope of the glory of heaven is made use of ordinarily by God, since the fall of Adam, as an encouragement to the practice of holiness, as the Scripture abundantly shows. Christ, the great pattern of holiness, 'for the joy that was set before Him, endured the cross, despising the shame'.
    - a. *[Hebrews 12:2]- Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.*
    - b. *[2 Corinthians 4:16-17]- For which cause we faint not; but though our outward man perish, yet the inward man is renewed day by day. For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory;*
    - c. *[Hebrews 10:34]- For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.*
    - d. *[1 Corinthians 15:58]- Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye stedfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.*
    - e. *[Hebrews 6:11-12]- And we desire that every one of you do shew the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end: That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises.*
    - f. *[1 John 3:3]- And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.*
    - g. *[Romans 5:5]- And hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us.*
  3. This persuasion of our future enjoyment of everlasting happiness cannot tend to licentiousness, if we understand well that perfect holiness is a necessary part of that happiness, and that though we have a title to that happiness by free justification and adoption, yet we must go to the possession of it in a way of holiness. Neither is it legal nor mercenary to be moved by this persuasion, seeing the persuasion itself is not gotten by the works of the law, but by free grace through faith.
    - a. *[1 John 3:1-3]- Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not. Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall*

*be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is. And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.*

- b. *[Galatians 5:5]- For we through the Spirit wait for the hope of righteousness by faith.*
- c. *[2 Timothy 3:2]- For men shall be lovers of their own selves, covetous, boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy,*
- d. *[Acts 2:40]- And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation.*
- e. *[1 Timothy 4:16]- Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; continue in them: for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself, and them that hear thee.*
- f. *[Jeremiah 2:31]- O generation, see ye the word of the LORD. Have I been a wilderness unto Israel? a land of darkness? wherefore say my people, We are lords; we will come no more unto thee?*
- g. *[Hebrews 11:16]- But now they desire a better country, that is, an heavenly: wherefore God is not ashamed to be called their God: for he hath prepared for them a city.*
- h. *[Hosea 11:4]- I drew them with cords of a man, with bands of love: and I was to them as they that take off the yoke on their jaws, and I laid meat unto them.*
- i. *[Jude 21]- Keep yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life.*

**D.** The last endowment, for the same end as the former, *is that we will be persuaded of sufficient strength both to will and perform our duty acceptably*, until we come to the enjoyment of the heavenly happiness.

- 1. We are, by nature, dead in trespasses and sins, unable to will or do anything that is spiritually good, notwithstanding the redemption that is by Christ until we are actually quickened by Christ.
  - a. *[Ephesians 2:1]- And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins;*
  - b. *[Romans 8:7-9]- Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God. But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.*
  - c. *[Philippians 2:13]- For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure.*
- 2. Those that think sincere conformity to the law, in ordinary cases, to be so very easy, show that they neither know it nor themselves. Is it an easy thing to wrestle, not against flesh only, but against principalities, powers and spiritual wickedness in high places? Is it an easy thing not to lust or covet according to the tenth commandment? The apostle Paul found it so difficult to obey this commandment that his concupiscence prevailed the more by occasion of the commandment.
  - a. *[Ephesians 6:12]- For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.*
  - b. *[Romans 7:7-8]- What shall we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet. But sin, taking occasion by the commandment, wrought in me all manner of concupiscence. For without the law sin was dead.*
  - c. *[Matthew 5:29-30]- And if thy right eye offend thee, pluck it out, and cast it from thee: for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not that thy whole body should be cast into hell. And if thy right hand offend thee, cut it off, and cast it*

*from thee: for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not that thy whole body should be cast into hell.*

- d. *[Romans 1:32]- Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them.*
- e. *[Luke 13:24]- Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able.*

3. The wisdom of God has ever furnished people with a good persuasion of a sufficient strength that they might be enabled both to will and do their duty. The first Adam was furnished with such a strength; and we have no cause to think that he was ignorant of it, or that he needed to fear that he should be left to his own corruptions, because he had no corruptions in him, until he had produced them in himself by sinning against strength. When he had lost that strength, he could not recover the practice of holiness, until he was acquainted with a better strength, by which the head of Satan should be bruised.

- a. *[Genesis 3:15]- And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.*
- b. *[Isaiah 50:7]- For the Lord GOD will help me; therefore shall I not be confounded: therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.*
- c. *[Matthew 20:22]- But Jesus answered and said, Ye know not what ye ask. Are ye able to drink of the cup that I shall drink of, and to be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with? They say unto him, We are able.*
- d. *[Romans 6:13-14]- Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God. For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.*
- e. *[Ephesians 6:10-11]- Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.*
- f. *[1 John 2:14-15]- I have written unto you, fathers, because ye have known him that is from the beginning. I have written unto you, young men, because ye are strong, and the word of God abideth in you, and ye have overcome the wicked one. Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him.*

III. *The way to get holy endowments and qualifications necessary to frame and enable us for the immediate practice of the law, is to receive them out of the fullness of Christ, by fellowship with Him; and that we may have this fellowship, we must be in Christ, and have Christ Himself in us, by a mystical union with Him.*

- A. *[John 14:5,20]- Thomas saith unto him, Lord, we know not whither thou goest; and how can we know the way? At that day ye shall know that I am in my Father, and ye in me, and I in you.*
- B. One great mystery is that the holy frame and disposition, by which our souls are furnished and enabled for immediate practice of the law, must be obtained by receiving it out of Christ's fullness, as a thing already prepared and brought to an existence for us in Christ and treasured up in Him; and that as we are justified by a righteousness wrought out in Christ and imputed to us, so we are sanctified by such a holy frame and qualifications as are first wrought out and completed in Christ for us, and then imparted to us.
  - 1. *[1 John 1: 1-3]- That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life; (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;) That which we*

*have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.*

- C. Another great mystery in the way of sanctification is the glorious manner of our fellowship with Christ in receiving a holy frame of heart from Him. It is by our being in Christ, and having Christ Himself in us - and that not merely by His universal preference, as He is God, but by such a close union as that we are one spirit and one flesh with Him; which is a privilege peculiar to those that are truly sanctified. I may well call this a mystical union, because the apostle calls it a great mystery, in an Epistle full of mysteries, intimating that it is eminently great above many other mysteries. It is one of the three mystical unions that are the chief mysteries in religion. The other two are the union of the Trinity of Persons in one Godhead, and the union of the divine and human natures in one Person, Jesus Christ, God and man.
1. *[Ephesians 5:32]- This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.*
  2. *[John 6:56]- He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.*
  3. *[John 14:20]- At that day ye shall know that I am in my Father, and ye in me, and I in you.*
  4. *[1 Corinthians 6:17]- But he that is joined unto the Lord is one spirit.*
  5. *[Ephesians 5:30-31]- For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones. For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.*
  6. *[John 17:21-23]- That they all may be one; as thou, Father, art in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: that the world may believe that thou hast sent me. And the glory which thou gavest me I have given them; that they may be one, even as we are one: I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me.*
  7. *[John 15:4-5]- Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in me. I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.*
  8. *[Ephesians 1:22-23]- And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church, Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all.*
  9. *[John 6:51,53,54]- I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world. Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, ye have no life in you. Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day.*
  10. *[Ephesians 5:32]- This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.*
- D. Supernatural revelation of the mysterious way of sanctification, which God has given to us in the Holy Scriptures and resemblances and similitude.
1. There are several places in Scripture that plainly express it. Some texts show that all things pertaining to our salvation are treasured up for us in Christ, and comprehended in His fullness so that we must have them from that place, or not at all.
    - a. *[Colossians 1:19]- For it pleased the Father that in him should all fulness dwell;*
    - b. *[Colossians 2:11-13]- In whom also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ: Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead. And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;*

- c. *[Ephesians 1:3]- Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ:*
  - d. *[Ephesians 3:10]- To the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly places might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God,*
  - e. *[Ephesians 6:12]- For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.*
  - f. *[1 Corinthians 1:30]- But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:*
  - g. *[John 1:16-17]- And of his fulness have all we received, and grace for grace. For the law was given by Moses, but grace and truth came by Jesus Christ.*
  - h. *[1 John 1:3,5-7]- That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ. This then is the message which we have heard of him, and declare unto you, that God is light, and in him is no darkness at all. If we say that we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth: But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.*
  - i. *[Colossians 3:10-11]- And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him: Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.*
  - j. *[1 Corinthians 6:17]- But he that is joined unto the Lord is one spirit.*
  - k. *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
  - l. *[John 5:11-12]- He answered them, He that made me whole, the same said unto me, Take up thy bed, and walk. Then asked they him, What man is that which said unto thee, Take up thy bed, and walk?*
2. We receive from Christ a new holy frame and nature, by which we are enabled for a holy practice, by union and fellowship with Him, in like manner.
- a. As Christ lived in our nature by the Father.
    - 1.) *[John 6:57]- As the living Father hath sent me, and I live by the Father: so he that eateth me, even he shall live by me.*
  - b. As we receive original sin and death propagated to us from the first Adam.
    - 1.) *[Romans 5:12,14,16,17]- Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned: Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come. And not as it was by one that sinned, so is the gift: for the judgment was by one to condemnation, but the free gift is of many offences unto justification. For if by one man's offence death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.)*
  - c. As the natural body receives sense, motion and nourishment from the head.

- 1.) *[Colossians 2:19]- And not holding the Head, from which all the body by joints and bands having nourishment ministered, and knit together, increaseth with the increase of God.*
- d. As the branch receives its sap, juice and fructifying virtue from the vine.
- 1.) *[John 15:4-5]- Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in me. I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.*
- e. As the wife brings forth fruit by virtue of her conjugal union with her husband.
- 1.) *[Romans 7:4]- Wherefore, my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another, even to him who is raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto God.*
- f. As stones become a holy temple by being built on the foundation, and joined with the chief corner-stone.
- 1.) *[1 Peter 2:4-6]- To whom coming, as unto a living stone, disallowed indeed of men, but chosen of God, and precious, Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ. Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded.*
- g. As we receive the nourishing virtue of bread by eating it, and of wine by drinking it, which last resemblance is used to seal to us our communion with Christ in the Lord's Supper.
- 1.) *[John 6:51, 55, 57]- I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world. For my flesh is meat indeed, and my blood is drink indeed. As the living Father hath sent me, and I live by the Father: so he that eateth me, even he shall live by me.*
3. The end of Christ's incarnation, death and resurrection was to prepare and form a holy nature and frame for us in Himself, to be communicated to us by union and fellowship with Him; and not to enable us to produce in ourselves the first original of such a holy nature by our own endeavors.
- a. By His incarnation, there was a man created in a new holy frame, after the holiness of the first Adam's frame had been marred and abolished by the first transgression. This new frame was far more excellent than ever the first Adam's was; because man was really joined to God by a close inseparable union of the divine and human nature in one Person, Christ; so that these natures had communion each with the other in their actings, and Christ was able to act in His human nature, by power proper to the divine nature, in which He was one God with the Father.
- 1.) *[John 14:10]- Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.*
- 2.) *[1 Corinthians 15:45,49]- And so it is written, The first man Adam was made a living soul; the last Adam was made a quickening spirit. And as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.*
- 3.) *[Matthew 1:23]- Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.*

- 4.) *[Colossians 2:9-10]- For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily. And ye are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power:*
  - 5.) *[John 6:51,56]- I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world. He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.*
- b. By His death, He freed Himself from the guilt of our sins imputed to Him, and from all that innocent weakness of His human nature which He had borne for a time for our sakes. And, by freeing Himself, He prepared a freedom for us, from our whole natural condition, which is both weak as He was, and also polluted without guilt and sinful corruption. Thus the corrupt natural estate, which is called in Scripture the old man, was crucified together with Christ, that the body of sin might be destroyed.
- 1.) *[Romans 6:2-4,10,11]- God forbid. How shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein? Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. For in that he died, he died unto sin once: but in that he liveth, he liveth unto God. Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord.*
  - 2.) *[Romans 8:3-4]- For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.*
  - 3.) *[Romans 10:4-6]- For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth. For Moses describeth the righteousness which is of the law, That the man which doeth those things shall live by them. But the righteousness which is of faith speaketh on this wise, Say not in thine heart, Who shall ascend into heaven? (that is, to bring Christ down from above:)*
  - 4.) *[Philippians 3:9]- And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:*
  - 5.) *[Romans 8:4]- That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.*
  - 6.) *[John 12:24]- Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except a corn of wheat fall into the ground and die, it abideth alone: but if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit.*
  - 7.) *[I Corinthians 5:7-8]- Purge out therefore the old leaven, that ye may be a new lump, as ye are unleavened. For even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us: Therefore let us keep the feast, not with old leaven, neither with the leaven of malice and wickedness; but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.*
  - 8.) *[I Corinthians 11:24]- And when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me.*
  - 9.) *[I Corinthians 10:4]- And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.*
  - 10.) *[Ephesians 2:15]- Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself of twain one new man, so making peace;*
  - 11.) *[Isaiah 53:10]- Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand.*

- c. By His resurrection, He took possession of spiritual life for us, as now fully procured for us, and made to be our right and property by the merit of His death.
- 1.) *[Ephesians 2:5-6]- Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;) And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:*
  - 2.) *[Romans 7:4]- Wherefore, my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another, even to him who is raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto God.*
  - 3.) *[Romans 6:4,5,10,11]- Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection: For in that he died, he died unto sin once: but in that he liveth, he liveth unto God. Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord.*
- d. Our sanctification is by the Holy Ghost, by whom we live and walk holily. Now, the Holy Ghost first rested on Christ in all fullness, that He might be communicated from Him to us; as was signified to John the Baptist by the similitude of the descending of a dove from the opened heavens, resting on Christ at His baptism.
- 1.) *[Romans 15:16]- That I should be the minister of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, ministering the gospel of God, that the offering up of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost.*
  - 2.) *[Galatians 5:25]- If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.*
  - 3.) *[John 1:32-33]- And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him. And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.*
  - 4.) *[1 Corinthians 12:13]- For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.*
  - 5.) *[Romans 8:9-10]- But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.*
  - 6.) *[John 16:14-15]- He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall shew it unto you. All things that the Father hath are mine: therefore said I, that he shall take of mine, and shall shew it unto you.*
- e. The effectual causes of those four principal endowments, which in the foregoing direction were asserted as necessary to furnish us for the immediate practice of holiness, are comprehended in the fullness of Christ, and treasured up for us in Him; and the endowments themselves, together with their causes, are attained richly by union and fellowship with Christ.
- 1.) *[Romans 8:1,4-5]- There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit.*
  - 2.) *[Galatians 5:17]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*



- 3.) *[2 Corinthians 5:21]- For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.*
  - 4.) *[Romans 5:19]- For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous.*
  - 5.) *[Romans 8:15]- For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.*
  - 6.) *[Rom. 8:17,23,35,37,39]- And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together. And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body. Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us. Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.*
  - 7.) *[Romans 8:1]- There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.*
- f. Whereas it may be doubted whether the saints that lived before the coming of Christ in the flesh could possibly be one flesh with Him, and receive a new nature by union and fellowship with Him, as prepared for them, in His fullness, we are to know that the same Christ that took our flesh was before Abraham, and was foreordained before the foundation of the world, to be sacrificed as a lamb without blemish, that He might redeem us from all iniquity by His precious blood.
- 1.) *[John 8:58]- Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I am.*
  - 2.) *[1 Peter 1:18-20]- Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers; But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot: Who verily was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you,*
  - 3.) *[1 Peter 1:11]- Searching what, or what manner of time the Spirit of Christ which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow.*
  - 4.) *[1 Peter 3:18-19]- For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit: By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison;*
  - 5.) *[Psalm 16:9-11]- Therefore my heart is glad, and my glory rejoiceth: my flesh also shall rest in hope. For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption. Thou wilt shew me the path of life: in thy presence is fulness of joy; at thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore.*
  - 6.) *[1 Corinthians 10:3-4]- And did all eat the same spiritual meat; and did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.*
  - 7.) *[Ephesians 1:10]- That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him:*
  - 8.) *[Ephesians 2:20-21]- And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone; In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord:*
  - 9.) *[Hebrews 13:8]- Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever.*

IV. *The means or instruments by which the Spirit of God accomplishes our union with Christ, and our fellowship with Him in all holiness, are the gospel, by which Christ enters into our hearts to work faith in us, and faith, by which we actually receive Christ Himself, with all His fullness, into our hearts. And this faith is a grace of the Spirit, by which we heartily believe the gospel and also believe on Christ as He is revealed and freely promised to us in this, for all His salvation.*

- A. One of these means is *the gospel of the grace of God*, in which God makes known to us the unsearchable riches of Christ and Christ in us, the hope of glory (), and also invites us and commands us to believe on Christ for His salvation, and encourages us by a free promise of that salvation to all that believe on Him (Acts 16:31; Rom. 10:9, 11).
1. *[Ephesians 3:8]- Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ;*
  2. *[Colossians 1:27]- To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:*
  3. *[Acts 16:31]- And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.*
  4. *[Romans 10:9,11]- That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.*
  5. *[Acts 3:26]- Unto you first God, having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities.*
  6. *[2 Corinthians 3:6,8-9]- Who also hath made us able ministers of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit: for the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life.*
  7. *[Romans 10:16-17]- But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report? So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.*
  8. *[1 Corinthians 4:15]- For though ye have ten thousand instructors in Christ, yet have ye not many fathers: for in Christ Jesus I have begotten you through the gospel.*
  9. *[Galatians 4:19]- My little children, of whom I travail in birth again until Christ be formed in you,*
  10. *[Romans 10:6-8]- But the righteousness which is of faith speaketh on this wise, Say not in thine heart, Who shall ascend into heaven? (that is, to bring Christ down from above:) Or, Who shall descend into the deep? (that is, to bring up Christ again from the dead.) But what saith it? The word is nigh thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart: that is, the word of faith, which we preach;*
- B. The other of these means is *faith that is wrought in us by the gospel*. This is our instrument of reception, by which the union between Christ and us is accomplished on our part by our actual receiving Christ Himself with all His fullness in our heart, which is the principal subject of the present explanation.
1. *[Romans 3:24-25]- Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus: Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;*
  2. Saving faith must necessarily contain two acts.
    - a. Believing the truth of the gospel.
    - b. Believing on Christ, as promised freely to us in the gospel, for all salvation.
      - 1.) *[2 Thessalonians 1:10]- When he shall come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them that believe (because our testimony among you was believed) in that day.*

- 2.) *[Philippians 3:8-9]- Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ, And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:*
- 3.) *[Colossians 3: 11,19]- Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all. Husbands, love your wives, and be not bitter against them.*
- 4.) *[Psalm 51:9-10]- Hide thy face from my sins, and blot out all mine iniquities. Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me.*
- 5.) *[Matthew 5:6]- Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled.*
- 6.) *[Psalm 9:10]- And they that know thy name will put their trust in thee: for thou, LORD, hast not forsaken them that seek thee.*
- 7.) *[Romans 10:9,11]- That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.*
- 8.) *[1 John 5:1,13]- Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him. These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.*
- 9.) *[2 Corinthians 1:20]- For all the promises of God in him are yea, and in him Amen, unto the glory of God by us.*
- 10.) *[1 Peter 1:21]- Who by him do believe in God, that raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory; that your faith and hope might be in God.*
- 11.) *[Psalm 78:22]- Because they believed not in God, and trusted not in his salvation:*

- C. Having thus explained the nature of faith, I come now to assert its proper use and office in our salvation: *that it is the means and instrument by which we receive Christ and all His fullness actually into our hearts.* This excellent use and office of faith is encountered by a multitude of errors.
1. Men naturally esteem that it is too small and slight a thing to produce so great effects, as Naaman thought washing in Jordan too small a matter for the cure of his leprosy. They contemn the true means of entering in at the strait gate, because they seem too easy for such purpose, and in this way they make the entrance not only difficult, but impossible to themselves.
  2. Some will allow that faith is the sole condition of our justification and the instrument to receive it, according to the doctrine maintained formerly by the Protestants against the Papists; but they account that it is not sufficient or effectual to sanctification, but that it rather tends to licentiousness, if it is not joined with some other means that may be powerful and effectual to secure a holy practice.
    - a. Their common antidote or corrective is that sanctification is necessary to salvation, as well as justification; and though
  3. All these errors will fall if it can be proved that such a faith as I have described is an instrument by which we actually receive Christ Himself into our hearts, and holiness of heart and life, as well as justification, by union and fellowship with Him.
    - a. By faith we have the actual enjoyment and possession of Christ Himself, and not only of remission of sin, but of life, and so of holiness.

- 1.) *[Ephesians 3:17]- That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love,*
  - 2.) *[Galatians 2:19-20]- For I through the law am dead to the law, that I might live unto God. I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
  - 3.) *[1 John 5:12-13]- He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life. These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.*
  - 4.) *[John 3:36]- He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.*
  - 5.) *[Romans 5:2]- By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God.*
- b. The Scripture plainly ascribes this effect to faith: that by it we receive Christ, put Him on, are rooted and grounded in Him; and also that we receive the Spirit, remission of sins and an inheritance among them which are sanctified.
- 1.) *[John 1:12]- But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:*
  - 2.) *[Galatians 3:26-27]- For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus. For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.*
  - 3.) *[Colossians 2:6-7]- As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk ye in him: Rooted and built up in him, and stablished in the faith, as ye have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving.*
  - 4.) *[Galatians 3:14]- That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.*
  - 5.) *[Acts 26:18]- To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.*
  - 6.) *[John 7:37-39]- In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink. He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)*
  - 7.) *[John 6:35,47-48,54-56]- And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst. Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life. I am that bread of life. Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day. For my flesh is meat indeed, and my blood is drink indeed. He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.*
- c. Christ, with all His salvation, is freely given by the grace of God to all that believe on Him, for we are saved by grace through faith; and that not of ourselves, it is the gift of God.
- 1.) *[Ephesians 2:8-9]- For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast.*
  - 2.) *[Romans 3:24-25]- Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus: Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his*

*blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;*

3.) *[Acts 2:38]- Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.*

4.) *[Romans 11:6]- And if by grace, then is it no more of works: otherwise grace is no more grace. But if it be of works, then it is no more grace: otherwise work is no more work.*

- d. That all spiritual life and holiness are treasured up in the fullness of Christ and communicated to us by union with Him. Therefore the accomplishing of union with Christ is the first work of saving grace in our hearts.
- e. True saving faith, has in its nature and manner of operation a peculiar aptitude or fitness to receive Christ and His salvation, and to unite our souls to Him, and to furnish the soul with a new holy nature, and to bring forth a holy practice by union and fellowship with Him.

**D.** In like manner, we may know that faith is an instrument formed on purpose for our union with Christ and sanctification, if we consider what a peculiar fitness it has for the work. The discovery of this is of great use for the understanding of the mysterious manner of our receiving and practicing all holiness by union and fellowship with Christ, by this precious grace of faith.

- I. The grace of faith is as well fitted for the soul's receiving Christ and union with Him as any instrument of the body is for receiving and closing with things needful for it. By the very act of hearty trusting or believing on Christ for salvation and happiness, the soul casts and puts away from itself everything that keeps it at a distance from Christ as all confidence in our strength, endeavors, works, privileges; or in any worldly pleasures, profits, honors; or in any human helps and succors for our happiness and salvation, because such confidences are inconsistent with our confidence in Christ for all salvation.
  - a. *[Philippians 3:3,5-9]- For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh. Circumcised the eighth day, of the stock of Israel, of the tribe of Benjamin, an Hebrew of the Hebrews; as touching the law, a Pharisee; Concerning zeal, persecuting the church; touching the righteousness which is in the law, blameless. But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ. Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ, And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:*
  - b. *[Hosea 14:3]- Asshur shall not save us; we will not ride upon horses: neither will we say any more to the work of our hands, Ye are our gods: for in thee the fatherless findeth mercy.*
  - c. *[2 Chronicles 20:12]- O our God, wilt thou not judge them? for we have no might against this great company that cometh against us; neither know we what to do: but our eyes are upon thee.*
  - d. *[John 6:35]- And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.*
  - e. *[Psalm 73:28]- But it is good for me to draw near to God: I have put my trust in the Lord GOD, that I may declare all thy works.*
  - f. *[Psalm 57:1]- Be merciful unto me, O God, be merciful unto me: for my soul trusteth in thee: yea, in the shadow of thy wings will I make my refuge, until these calamities be overpast.*

- g. *[Isaiah 50:10]- Who is among you that feareth the LORD, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? let him trust in the name of the LORD, and stay upon his God.*
  - h. *[Isaiah 26:3]- Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on thee: because he trusteth in thee.*
  - i. *[1 Timothy 6:12]- Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, whereunto thou art also called, and hast professed a good profession before many witnesses.*
  - j. *[Psalm 25:1]- Unto thee, O LORD, do I lift up my soul.*
  - k. *[Psalm 37:5]- Commit thy way unto the LORD; trust also in him; and he shall bring it to pass.*
  - l. *[Psalm 55:22]- Cast thy burden upon the LORD, and he shall sustain thee: he shall never suffer the righteous to be moved.*
2. There is in this saving faith a natural tendency to furnish the soul with a holy frame and nature, and all endowments necessary to it, out of the fullness of Christ. A hearty affectionate trusting on Christ for all His salvation, as freely promised to us, has naturally enough in it to work in our souls a rational bent and inclination to, and ability for, the practice of holiness; because it comprehends in it a trusting that, through Christ, we are dead to sin and alive to God; that our old man is crucified; and that we live by the Spirit; and that we have forgiveness of sin; and that God is our God; and that we have in the Lord righteousness and strength, by which we are able to do all things; and that we shall be gloriously happy in the enjoyment of Christ to all eternity.
- a. *[Romans 6:2-4]- God forbid. How shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein? Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.*
  - b. *[Galatians 5:25]- If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.*
  - c. *[Psalm 48:14]- For this God is our God for ever and ever: he will be our guide even unto death.*
  - d. *[Isaiah 45:24]- Surely, shall one say, in the LORD have I righteousness and strength: even to him shall men come; and all that are incensed against him shall be ashamed.*
  - e. *[Philippians 4:13]- I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.*
  - f. *[Philippians 3:20-21]- For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ: Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.*
3. Because faith has such a natural tendency to dispose and strengthen the soul for the practice of holiness, we have cause to judge it a suitable instrument to accomplish every part of that practice in an acceptable manner.
- a. *[1 John 4:19]- We love him, because he first loved us.*
  - b. *[Ephesians 5:20]- Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ;*
  - c. *[John 16:26-27]- At that day ye shall ask in my name: and I say not unto you, that I will pray the Father for you: For the Father himself loveth you, because ye have loved me, and have believed that I came out from God.*
  - d. *[Colossians 1:11-12]- Strengthened with all might, according to his glorious power, unto all patience and longsuffering with joyfulness;*

- e. *[1 John 5:1]- Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.*
- f. *[1 John 2:6]- He that saith he abideth in him ought himself also so to walk, even as he walked.*
- g. *[2 Corinthians 5:14]- For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead:*
- h. *[Hebrews 12.1]- Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us,*
- i. *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
- j. *[Jude 20]- But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,*

**E.** The author and finisher of our faith, and of our union and fellowship with Christ by faith, is no less than the infinite Spirit of God, and God and Christ Himself by the Spirit, for by one Spirit we are all baptized into one body of Christ and are all made to drink into one Spirit. God grant us, according to the riches of His glory, to be strengthened with all might by the Spirit in the inner man that Christ may dwell in our hearts by faith.

- 1. *[1 Corinthians 12:12-13]- For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also is Christ. For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.*
- 2. *[Ephesians 3:16-17]- That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man; That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love,*
- 3. *[John 3:5]- Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.*
- 4. *[John 1:12-13]- But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name: Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.*
- 5. *[Luke 1:35]- And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.*
- 6. *[Ephesians 2:10]- For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.*
- 7. *[2 Corinthians 5:17]- Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.*

**F.** For, if the gospel should come to us in word only, and not in power and in the Holy Ghost, Paul might labor to plant, and Apollos to water, without any success, because we cannot receive the things of the Spirit of God; yea, we shall account them foolishness until the Spirit of God enable us to discern them. We shall never come to Christ by any teaching of man, except we also hear and learn of the Father and be drawn to Christ by His Spirit.

- 1. *[1 Thessalonians 1:5]- For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake.*
- 2. *[1 Corinthians 3:6]- I have planted, Apollos watered; but God gave the increase.*

3. *[1 Corinthians 2:14]- But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.*
4. *[John 6:44-45]- No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day. It is written in the prophets, And they shall be all taught of God. Every man therefore that hath heard, and hath learned of the Father, cometh unto me.*
5. *[Romans 4:16]- Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all,*

V. *We cannot attain to the practice of true holiness by any of our endeavors while we continue in our natural state and are not partakers of a new state by union and fellowship with Christ through faith.*

- A. It is evident all do not have that precious faith by which Christ dwells in our hearts; yea, the number of those that have it is small comparatively to the whole world that lies in wickedness; and many of those that at length attain to it do continue without it for some considerable time. And though some may have the spirit of faith given to them from their mother's womb (as John the Baptist), yet even in them there is a natural being by generation before there can be a spiritual being by regeneration.
1. *[1 John 5:19-20]- And we know that we are of God, and the whole world lieth in wickedness. And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.*
  2. *[Ephesians 2:12]- That at that time ye were without Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and without God in the world:*
  3. *[Luke 1:15, 44]- For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb. For, lo, as soon as the voice of thy salutation sounded in mine ears, the babe leaped in my womb for joy.*
  4. *[1 Corinthians 15:46]- Howbeit that was not first which is spiritual, but that which is natural; and afterward that which is spiritual.*
- B. It is a common error of those that are in a corrupt natural state that they seek to reform their lives according to the law, without any thoughts that their state must be changed before their lives can be changed from sin to righteousness. The heathens, that knew nothing of a new state in Christ, were urged by their own consciences to practice several duties of the law, according to the knowledge they had by the light of nature.
1. *[Romans 2:14-15]- For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, having not the law, are a law unto themselves: Which shew the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another;)*
  2. *[Philippians 3:6]- Concerning zeal, persecuting the church; touching the righteousness which is in the law, blameless.*
  3. *[Mark 12:33-34]- And to love him with all the heart, and with all the understanding, and with all the soul, and with all the strength, and to love his neighbour as himself, is more than all whole burnt offerings and sacrifices. And when Jesus saw that he answered discreetly, he said unto him, Thou art not far from the kingdom of God. And no man after that durst ask him any question.*



- C. There are several false opinions by which such ignorant zealots encourage themselves in their fruitless endeavors.
1. Some of them judge that they are able to practice holiness, because they are not compelled to sin, and may abstain from it if they will.
  2. To this they add that Christ, by the merit of His death, has restored that freedom of will to good which was lost by the Fall, and has set nature on its legs again, and that, if they endeavor to do what lies in them, Christ will do the rest, by assisting them with the supplies of His saving grace; so they trust on the grace of Christ to help them in their endeavors.
  3. They plead further that it would not consist with the justice of God to punish them for sin, if they could not avoid it; and that it would be in vain for the ministers of the gospel to preach to them and exhort them to any saving duty, if they cannot perform it.
  4. They produce examples of heathens, and of such as had the name of Christians, without any acquaintance with the faith that I have described, who have attained to a great excellency in religious words and works.
  5. The foundation of this assertion is firmly laid in the direction already explained, and confirmed by many places of Scripture.
  6. It is evident that we cannot practice true holiness while we continue in a natural state, because we must be born of water and of the Spirit, or else we cannot enter into the kingdom of God; and we are created in Christ Jesus to good works, which God has before ordained that we should walk in them (Eph. 2:10).
    - a. *[John 3:3,5]- Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God. Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.*
    - b. *[Ephesians 2:10]- For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.*
    - c. *[Luke 10:28]- And he said unto him, Thou hast answered right: this do, and thou shalt live.*
    - d. *[2 Corinthians 5:17]- Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.*
  7. It is positively asserted by the apostle Paul that those that are in the flesh cannot please God
    - a. *[Romans 8:8]- So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.*
    - b. *[Romans 7:18]- For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not.*
    - c. *[Galatians 5:17]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*
    - d. *[Romans 8:9]- But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.*
    - e. *[John 3:6]- That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.*
  8. The apostle testifies that those that have been taught as the truth is in Jesus have learned to avoid their normal sinful conversation by putting off the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts, and by putting on the new man, which after God, is created in righteousness and true holiness.
    - a. *[Ephesians 4:21-22,24]- If so be that ye have heard him, and have been taught by him, as the truth is in Jesus: That ye put off concerning the former conversation the old man,*

*which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts; And that ye put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.*

- b. *[Colossians 3:11]- Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.*
  - c. *[Romans 6:6-7]- Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.*
  - d. *[Romans 13:12-14]- The night is far spent, the day is at hand: let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armour of light. Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying. But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.*
9. Our natural state has several properties that wholly disable us for the practice of holiness and enslave us to the practice of sin while we continue in it.
- a. One thing belonging to our natural state is *the guilt of sin*, even of Adam's first sin, and of the sinful depravation of our nature, and of all our own actual transgressions, and therefore we are by nature the children of wrath and under the curse of God. The benefit of remission of our sin and freedom from condemnation is not given to us in the flesh, or in a natural state, but only in Christ. And can we imagine that a man should be able to prevail against sin, while God is against him, and curses him?
    - 1.) *[Ephesians 2:3]- Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.*
    - 2.) *[Romans 8:1]- There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.*
    - 3.) *[Ephesians 1:7]- In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;*
  - b. Another property, inseparable from the former, is *an evil conscience*, which denounces the wrath of God against us for sin, and inclines us to abhor Him as our enemy, rather than to love Him, as has been shown; or, if it is a blind conscience, it hardens us the more in our sins.
  - c. A third property is *an evil inclination*, tending only to sin, which therefore is called 'sin that dwells in us', and 'the law of sin in our members', that powerfully subdues and captivates us to the service of sin.
    - 1.) *[Romans 7:20,23]- Now if I do that I would not, it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me. But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members.*
    - 2.) *[Romans 8:7]- Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.*
  - d. A fourth property is *subjection to the power of the devil* who is the god of this world, that has blinded the minds of all that do not believe, and will certainly conquer all whom he fights with on his own dunghill, that is, in a natural state.
    - 1.) *[2 Corinthians 4:4]- In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.*

- e. And, from all these properties, we may well conclude that our natural state has the property never to be good, to be stark dead in sin, according to the sentence denounced against the first sin of mankind in Adam: ‘In the day that you eat of it you shall surely die’.
- 1.) *[Ephesians 2:1]- And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins;*
  - 2.) *[Genesis 2:17]- But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.*
  - 3.) *[Romans 5:6]- For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly.*
  - 4.) *[Romans 7:18]- For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not.*
10. We have no good ground to trust on Christ to help us to will or to do that which is acceptable to Him while we continue in our natural state, or to imagine that freedom of will to holiness is restored to us by the merit of His death.
- a. *[Romans 7:25]- I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.*
  - b. *[Galatians 5:17]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*
  - c. *[Romans 8:10]- And if Christ be in you, the body is dead because of sin; but the Spirit is life because of righteousness.*
  - d. *[Romans 6:6]- Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.*
  - e. *[Leviticus 13:56]- And if the priest look, and, behold, the plague be somewhat dark after the washing of it; then he shall rend it out of the garment, or out of the skin, or out of the warp, or out of the woof:*
  - f. *[2 Corinthians 13:5]- Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates?*
11. This does not at all discharge those that are in a natural state from obligation to holiness of life, nor render them excusable for their sins at the tribunal of God’s justice. For God has made man upright, but they sought out many inventions.
- a. *[Ecclesiastes 7:29]- Lo, this only have I found, that God hath made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions.*
  - b. *[Genesis 25:23]- And the LORD said unto her, Two nations are in thy womb, and two manner of people shall be separated from thy bowels; and the one people shall be stronger than the other people; and the elder shall serve the younger.*
  - c. *[Romans 5:12]- Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:*
  - d. *[Hebrews 7:9-10]- And as I may so say, Levi also, who receiveth tithes, payed tithes in Abraham.*
  - e. *[Jeremiah 31:29-31]- In those days they shall say no more, The fathers have eaten a sour grape, and the children's teeth are set on edge. But every one shall die for his own iniquity: every man that eateth the sour grape, his teeth shall be set on edge. Behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah:*
  - f. *[2 Corinthians 1:20]- For all the promises of God in him are yea, and in him Amen, unto the glory of God by us.*

- g. *[Galatians 5:17]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*
  - h. *[John 3:20]- For every one that doeth evil hateth the light, neither cometh to the light, lest his deeds should be reproved.*
  - i. *[Philippians 1:6]- Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ:*
  - j. *[2 Corinthians 8:12]- For if there be first a willing mind, it is accepted according to that a man hath, and not according to that he hath not.*
  - k. *[Job 15:16]- How much more abominable and filthy is man, which drinketh iniquity like water?*
12. Neither will this assertion make it a vain thing to preach the gospel to natural people, and to exhort them to true repentance and faith in Christ for their conversion and salvation. For the design of our preaching is not to bring them to holiness in their natural state, but to raise them above it, and to present them perfect in Christ in the performance of those duties.
- a. *[Colossians 1:28]- Whom we preach, warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus:*
  - b. *[1 Thessalonians 1:5-6]- For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake. And ye became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Ghost.*
  - c. *[2 Corinthians 3:6-8]- Who also hath made us able ministers of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit: for the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life. But if the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious, so that the children of Israel could not stedfastly behold the face of Moses for the glory of his countenance; which glory was to be done away: How shall not the ministration of the spirit be rather glorious?*
  - d. *[2 Corinthians 10:4]- (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;)*
  - e. *[John 5:25]- Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God: and they that hear shall live.*
  - f. *[Mark 5:4]- Because that he had been often bound with fetters and chains, and the chains had been plucked asunder by him, and the fetters broken in pieces: neither could any man tame him.*
  - g. *[John 11:43-44]- And when he thus had spoken, he cried with a loud voice, Lazarus, come forth. And he that was dead came forth, bound hand and foot with graveclothes: and his face was bound about with a napkin. Jesus saith unto them, Loose him, and let him go.*
  - h. *[Matthew 9:6]- But that ye may know that the Son of man hath power on earth to forgive sins, (then saith he to the sick of the palsy,) Arise, take up thy bed, and go unto thine house.*
13. There is no reason that the examples of heathen philosophers, or any Jews or Christians by outward profession, that have lived without the saving knowledge of God in Christ, should move us, by their wise sayings and renowned attainments in the practice of devotion and morality, to recede from this truth that has been so fully confirmed out of the Holy Scriptures.
- a. *[1 Timothy 1:15]- This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptation, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners; of whom I am chief.*

- b. *[Philippians 3:6-8]- Concerning zeal, persecuting the church; touching the righteousness which is in the law, blameless. But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ. Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,*
- c. *[Romans 9:3,32]- For I could wish that myself were accursed from Christ for my brethren, my kinsmen according to the flesh: Wherefore? Because they sought it not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;*
- d. *[1Corinthians 13:3]- And though I bestow all my goods to feed the poor, and though I give my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing.*
- e. *[Galatians 4:23]- But he who was of the bondwoman was born after the flesh; but he of the freewoman was by promise.*
- f. *[Psalm 66:3]- Say unto God, How terrible art thou in thy works! through the greatness of thy power shall thine enemies submit themselves unto thee.*

VI. *Those that endeavor to perform sincere obedience to all the commands of Christ, as the condition by which they are to procure for themselves a right and title to salvation, and a good ground to trust on Him for the same, do seek their salvation by the works of the law, and not by the faith of Christ, as He is revealed in the gospel and they shall never be able to perform sincere and true holy obedience by all such endeavors.*

- A. Salvation as comprehending justification, as well as other saving benefits, and sincere obedience as comprehending holy resolutions, as well as the fulfilling of them.
  - 1. *[Romans 1:32]- Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them.*
  - 2. *[Romans 2:14-15]- For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, having not the law, are a law unto themselves: Which shew the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another;)*
  - 3. *[1 Corinthians 2:6-7,9,14]- Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor of the princes of this world, that come to nought: But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory: But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.*
  - 4. *[1 Corinthians 1:21]- For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.*
- B. One thing asserted in the direction against this fundamental error is that it is a way of salvation by the works of the law, and not by the faith of Christ, as revealed in the gospel; though the maintainers of it would have us believe that it is the only way of the gospel, that so we may not doubt its power and efficacy for our justification, sanctification and our whole salvation.
  - 1. All that seek salvation by the sincere performance of good works, as the procuring condition, are condemned by the apostle Paul for seeking righteousness by the works of the law, and not by faith, and for seeking to be justified by the law, and falling from the grace of Christ.
    - a. *[Romans 9:32]- Wherefore? Because they sought it not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;*
    - b. *[Galatians 5:4]- Christ is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; ye are fallen from grace.*

- c. *[Psalm 143:2]- And enter not into judgment with thy servant: for in thy sight shall no man living be justified.*
  - d. *[Proverbs 20:9]- Who can say, I have made my heart clean, I am pure from my sin?*
  - e. *[Ecclesiastes 7:20]- For there is not a just man upon earth, that doeth good, and sinneth not.*
  - f. *[Psalm 51:6,10]- Behold, thou desirest truth in the inward parts: and in the hidden part thou shalt make me to know wisdom. Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me.*
  - g. *[Deuteronomy 6:5]- And thou shalt love the LORD thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.*
  - h. *[Deuteronomy 30:10]- If thou shalt hearken unto the voice of the LORD thy God, to keep his commandments and his statutes which are written in this book of the law, and if thou turn unto the LORD thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul.*
  - i. *[Romans 4:2-6]- For if Abraham were justified by works, he hath whereof to glory; but not before God. For what saith the scripture? Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness. Now to him that worketh is the reward not reckoned of grace, but of debt. But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness. Even as David also describeth the blessedness of the man, unto whom God imputeth righteousness without works,*
  - j. *[Acts 21:20,26]- And when they heard it, they glorified the Lord, and said unto him, Thou seest, brother, how many thousands of Jews there are which believe; and they are all zealous of the law: Then Paul took the men, and the next day purifying himself with them entered into the temple, to signify the accomplishment of the days of purification, until that an offering should be offered for every one of them.*
  - k. *[Acts 15:5]- But there rose up certain of the sect of the Pharisees which believed, saying, That it was needful to circumcise them, and to command them to keep the law of Moses.*
  - l. *[Luke 18:11]- The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, God, I thank thee, that I am not as other men are, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican.*
  - m. *[Romans 9:32]- Wherefore? Because they sought it not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;*
  - n. *[Galatians 5:2,3]- Behold, I Paul say unto you, that if ye be circumcised, Christ shall profit you nothing. For I testify again to every man that is circumcised, that he is a debtor to do the whole law.*
  - o. *[Galatians 1:8-9]- But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed. As we said before, so say I now again, if any man preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed.*
2. The difference between the law and gospel does not at all consist in this, that the one requires perfect doing; the other, only sincere doing; but in this, that the one requires doing; the other, not doing, but believing for life and salvation. Their terms are different, not only in degree, but in their whole nature.
- a. *[Galatians 3:12]- And the law is not of faith: but, The man that doeth them shall live in them.*
  - b. *[Romans 10:5]- For Moses describeth the righteousness which is of the law, That the man which doeth those things shall live by them.*
  - c. *[Romans 4:5]- But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.*

- d. *[Galatians 5:3]- For I testify again to every man that is circumcised, that he is a debtor to do the whole law.*
3. Sincere obedience cannot be performed to all the commands of Christ in the gospel, except it is also performed to the moral law, as given by Moses, and as obliging us by that authority.
- a. *[Galatians 3:10-11]- For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them. But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident: for, The just shall live by faith.*
- b. *[Acts 21:20-21]- And when they heard it, they glorified the Lord, and said unto him, Thou seest, brother, how many thousands of Jews there are which believe; and they are all zealous of the law: And they are informed of thee, that thou teachest all the Jews which are among the Gentiles to forsake Moses, saying that they ought not to circumcise their children, neither to walk after the customs.*
- c. *[Matthew 5:19]- Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven: but whosoever shall do and teach them, the same shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven.*
- d. *[Matthew 23:2-3]- Saying The scribes and the Pharisees sit in Moses' seat: All therefore whatsoever they bid you observe, that observe and do; but do not ye after their works: for they say, and do not.*
- e. *[Luke 10:26-28]- He said unto him, What is written in the law? how readest thou? And he answering said, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy strength, and with all thy mind; and thy neighbour as thyself. And he said unto him, Thou hast answered right: this do, and thou shalt live.*
- f. *[Romans 13:8]- Owe no man any thing, but to love one another: for he that loveth another hath fulfilled the law.*
- g. *[Ephesians 6:2]- Honour thy father and mother; which is the first commandment with promise;*
- h. *[James 2:8,10-11]- If ye fulfil the royal law according to the scripture, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself, ye do well: For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all. For he that said, Do not commit adultery, said also, Do not kill. Now if thou commit no adultery, yet if thou kill, thou art become a transgressor of the law.*
- i. *[Ephesians 3:6]- That the Gentiles should be fellowheirs, and of the same body, and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel:*
- j. *[2 Corinthians 3:7]- But if the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious, so that the children of Israel could not stedfastly behold the face of Moses for the glory of his countenance; which glory was to be done away:*
- k. *[Matthew 5:48]- Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect.*
- l. *[Hebrews 8:8-9,13]- For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah: Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord. In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.*
- m. *[Exodus 34:28]- And he was there with the LORD forty days and forty nights; he did neither eat bread, nor drink water. And he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the Ten Commandments.*

- n. *[Galatians 2:16,20]- Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified. I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
  - o. *[Acts 3:22-25]- For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass, that every soul, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people. Yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have likewise foretold of these days. Ye are the children of the prophets, and of the covenant which God made with our fathers, saying unto Abraham, And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.*
  - p. *[Acts 15:10-11]- Now therefore why tempt ye God, to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples, which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear? But we believe that through the grace of the LORD Jesus Christ we shall be saved, even as they.*
4. Those that endeavor to procure Christ's salvation by their sincere obedience to all the commands of Christ do act contrary to that way of salvation by Christ, free grace and faith, discovered in the gospel, though they own it in profession ever so highly.
- a. They act contrary to the way of salvation by Christ, for they would heal themselves, and save themselves from the power and pollution of sin, and procure God's favor, by performing sincere obedience, before they are come to Christ, the only Physician and Saviour.
    - 1.) *[Romans 10:3-4]- For they being ignorant of God's righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God. For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.*
    - 2.) *[Romans 3:21-22]- But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets; Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:*
    - 3.) *[Philippians 3:9]- And be found in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:*
    - 4.) *[Galatians 5:2,4]- Behold, I Paul say unto you, that if ye be circumcised, Christ shall profit you nothing. Christ is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; ye are fallen from grace.*
  - b. They do act also contrary to salvation by grace, according to the true meaning of the gospel.
    - 1.) *[Romans 11:6]- And if by grace, then is it no more of works: otherwise grace is no more grace. But if it be of works, then it is no more grace: otherwise work is no more work.*
    - 2.) *[Romans 4:4]- Now to him that worketh is the reward not reckoned of grace, but of debt.*
    - 3.) *[Romans 4:13,16]- For the promise, that he should be the heir of the world, was not to Abraham, or to his seed, through the law, but through the righteousness of faith. Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be*



*sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all,*

- 4.) *[Ephesians 2:9]- Not of works, lest any man should boast.*
- c. They do also act contrary to the way of salvation by faith, for, as I have shown already, the faith which is required for our salvation in the gospel is to be understood in a sense contrary to doing good works as a condition to procure our salvation, and so the true difference between the terms of the law and the gospel may be maintained.
- 1.) *[Romans 4:5]- But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.*
  - 2.) *[Romans 3:27]- Where is boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? of works? Nay: but by the law of faith.*
  - 3.) *[Ephesians 2:8-9]- For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast.*
  - 4.) *[Romans 4:16]- Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all,*
- d. Christ or His apostles never taught a gospel that requires such a condition of works for salvation as they plead for.
- 1.) *[Romans 1:5]- By whom we have received grace and apostleship, for obedience to the faith among all nations, for his name:*
  - 2.) *[Romans 3:27]- Where is boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? of works? Nay: but by the law of faith.*
  - 3.) *[Romans 10:16]- But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?*
  - 4.) *[Romans 4:5]- But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.*
  - 5.) *[Romans 2:6-7]- Who will render to every man according to his deeds:*
  - 6.) *[Romans 3:9-10]- What then? are we better than they? No, in no wise: for we have before proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin; As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one:*
  - 7.) *[James 2:24]- Ye see then how that by works a man is justified, and not by faith only.*
  - 8.) *[James 2:8,11]- If ye fulfil the royal law according to the scripture, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself, ye do well: For he that said, Do not commit adultery, said also, Do not kill. Now if thou commit no adultery, yet if thou kill, thou art become a transgressor of the law.*
  - 9.) *[Revelation 22:12,14]- And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be. Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city.*
  - 10.) *[John 1:12]- But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:*
  - 11.) *[Matthew 5:12]- Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you.*
  - 12.) *[Romans 6:23]- For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.*

- C. Another thing asserted in the direction is that those that endeavor to perform this sincere obedience as a condition to procure a right and title to Christ and His salvation shall never be able to perform sincerely any true obedience by all such endeavors. Though they labor earnestly, and pray fervently, fast frequently, and oblige themselves to holiness by many vows, and press themselves to the practice of it by the most forcible motives taken from the infinite power, justice and knowledge of God, the equity and goodness of His commands, the salvation of Christ, everlasting happiness and misery, or any other motive improved by the most affectionate meditation - yet they shall never attain to the end which they aim at in such an erroneous way.
1. ***[Galatians 2:11,14]- But when Peter was come to Antioch, I withstood him to the face, because he was to be blamed. But when I saw that they walked not uprightly according to the truth of the gospel, I said unto Peter before them all, If thou, being a Jew, livest after the manner of Gentiles, and not as do the Jews, why compellest thou the Gentiles to live as do the Jews?***
  2. The way of salvation by the works of the law is contrary and destructive to those necessary means of a holy practice that have been laid down in the foregoing directions, and manifestly proved out of the Holy Scriptures.
    - a. ***[Romans 10:5]- For Moses describeth the righteousness which is of the law, That the man which doeth those things shall live by them.***
    - b. ***[Romans 4:14]- For if they which are of the law be heirs, faith is made void, and the promise made of none effect:***
    - c. ***[Galatians 2:21]- I do not frustrate the grace of God: for if righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain.***
    - d. ***[Galatians 5:2,4]- Behold, I Paul say unto you, that if ye be circumcised, Christ shall profit you nothing. Christ is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; ye are fallen from grace.***
    - e. ***[Mark 10:21]- Then Jesus beholding him loved him, and said unto him, One thing thou lackest: go thy way, sell whatsoever thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven: and come, take up the cross, and follow me.***
  3. Those that seek salvation by the works of the law do therein act according to their natural state. They live and walk according to the flesh, or old man; not according to the new state, by Christ living in them.
    - a. ***[Galatians 3:3]- Are ye so foolish? having begun in the Spirit, are ye now made perfect by the flesh?***
    - b. ***[Galatians 4:22,23,29]- For it is written, that Abraham had two sons, the one by a bondmaid, the other by a freewoman. But he who was of the bondwoman was born after the flesh; but he of the freewoman was by promise. But as then he that was born after the flesh persecuted him that was born after the Spirit, even so it is now.***
    - c. ***[Romans 7:1,4]- Know ye not, brethren, (for I speak to them that know the law,) how that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth? Wherefore, my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another, even to him who is raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto God.***
    - d. ***[Romans 6:14]- For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.***
    - e. ***[Galatians 5:18]- But if ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law.***
    - f. ***[Romans 8:3,4]- For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.***

- g. *[Romans 8:7]- Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.*
4. As the law bereaves of all strengthening means that are to be had by faith in Christ, and finds us without strength in our natural state, so, of itself, it affords us no strength to fulfil its own commands:
- a. *[Galatians 3:21]- Is the law then against the promises of God? God forbid: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law.*
  - b. *[Romans 10:5]- For Moses describeth the righteousness which is of the law, That the man which doeth those things shall live by them.*
  - c. *[Hebrews 12:19]- And the sound of a trumpet, and the voice of words; which voice they that heard intreated that the word should not be spoken to them any more:*
  - d. *[Acts 2:17]- And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:*
  - e. *[Hebrews 8:10]- For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:*
  - f. *[Ezekiel 36:27]- And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.*
  - g. *[Acts 20:32]- And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified.*
5. The way of procuring life and happiness by the condition of perfect or sincere works is not a rational method for the recovery of fallen man, though it were good for the preserving of life before the Fall, for it prescribes the immediate practice of holiness to recover a man dead in sin - as if one should say to the sick of the palsy, 'Arise and walk, and then you shall be whole and able to walk.'
- a. *[Galatians 5:25]- If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.*
  - b. *[1 John 4:19]- We love him, because he first loved us.*
6. The law is so far from healing our sinful corruption that it proves rather an occasion of sinful motions and actings in those that seek salvation by the works of it.
- a. *[Romans 7:5,14]- For when we were in the flesh, the motions of sins, which were by the law, did work in our members to bring forth fruit unto death. For we know that the law is spiritual: but I am carnal, sold under sin.*
  - b. *[Proverbs 9:8]- Reprove not a scorner, lest he hate thee: rebuke a wise man, and he will love thee.*
  - c. *[Isaiah 30:10]- Which say to the seers, See not; and to the prophets, Prophecy not unto us right things, speak unto us smooth things, prophesy deceits:*
  - d. *[Romans 6:14]- For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.*
7. The way of salvation by works was blasted by the curse denounced against the first Adam's sin, so that now it cannot work life in us, or holiness, but only death, for the law, which requires both sincere and perfect obedience to God in all things, was made known to Adam at his first creation, as the means of continuing the happy life that was then bestowed on him, and

it would have been effectual for this end, if he had not transgressed in eating the forbidden fruit.

- a. *[Genesis 2:17]- But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.*
- b. *[1 Corinthians 1:19-21]- For it is written, I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and will bring to nothing the understanding of the prudent. Where is the wise? where is the scribe? where is the disputer of this world? hath not God made foolish the wisdom of this world? For after that in the wisdom of God the world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.*

**D.** The end which God aimed at in giving the law to Moses was not that any should ever attain to holiness or salvation by the condition of perfect or sincere obedience to it, though, if there had been any such way of salvation at that time, it must have consisted in the performance of that law, which was then given to the church to be a rule of life, as well as a covenant.

1. *[Galatians 3:15-24]- Brethren, I speak after the manner of men; Though it be but a man's covenant, yet if it be confirmed, no man disannulleth, or addeth thereto. Now to Abraham and his seed were the promises made. He saith not, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to thy seed, which is Christ. And this I say, that the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect. For if the inheritance be of the law, it is no more of promise: but God gave it to Abraham by promise. Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made; and it was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator. Now a mediator is not a mediator of one, but God is one. Is the law then against the promises of God? God forbid: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law. But the scripture hath concluded all under sin, that the promise by faith of Jesus Christ might be given to them that believe. But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed. Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.*
2. *[Romans 5:20-21]- Moreover the law entered, that the offence might abound. But where sin abounded, grace did much more abound: That as sin hath reigned unto death, even so might grace reign through righteousness unto eternal life by Jesus Christ our Lord.*
3. *[Romans 10:3-4]- For they being ignorant of God's righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God. For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.*
4. *[2 Corinthians 3:6,8,9,11]- Who also hath made us able ministers of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit: for the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life. How shall not the ministration of the spirit be rather glorious? For if the ministration of condemnation be glory, much more doth the ministration of righteousness exceed in glory. For if that which is done away was glorious, much more that which remaineth is glorious.*

**VII.** *We are not to imagine that our hearts and lives must be changed from sin to holiness in any measure, before we may safely venture to trust on Christ for the sure enjoyment of Himself and His salvation.*

**A.** *[Matthew 22:11,13]- And when the king came in to see the guests, he saw there a man which had not on a wedding garment: Then said the king to the servants, Bind him hand and foot, and take him away, and cast him into outer darkness, there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.*

**B.** Apprehensions from Satan keeping some from trusting in Christ.

1. The error is pernicious to the practice of holiness, and to our whole salvation, in the same manner with that treated of in the foregoing direction, and may be confuted by the same arguments, which are there produced.

2. Any the least change of our hearts and lives from sin to holiness, before our receiving of Christ and His salvation by faith, is not at all necessary according to the terms of the gospel, nor required in the Word of God.
  - a. *[Acts 16:30,33]- And brought them out, and said, Sirs, what must I do to be saved? And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed their stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.*
  - b. *[Acts 2:41]- Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.*
  - c. *[Acts 2:23]- Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain:*
  - d. *[Romans 4:5]- But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.*
  - e. *[Matthew 9:12]- But when Jesus heard that, he said unto them, They that be whole need not a physician, but they that are sick.*
  - f. *[Ephesians 2:5,7]- Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;) That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.*
  - g. *[Romans 5:20]- Moreover the law entered, that the offence might abound. But where sin abounded, grace did much more abound:*
  
3. Those that receive Christ with an unfeigned faith shall never want a wedding garment to adorn them in the sight of God.
  - a. *[2 Peter 1:1]- Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ, to them that have obtained like precious faith with us through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ:*
  - b. *[Jude 20]- But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,*
  - c. *[Romans 4:16]- Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all,*
  - d. *[John 16:27]- For the Father himself loveth you, because ye have loved me, and have believed that I came out from God.*
  - e. *[Revelation 3:18]- I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.*
  - f. *[Revelation 12:1]- And there appeared a great wonder in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars:*
  
- C. Those with apprehensions in trusting Christ fully are fruits and consequences of faith, and therefore they cannot be rationally expected before we trust on Christ for our salvation.
  - I. They think it necessary to repent before they believe on Christ for their salvation, because repentance is absolutely necessary to salvation: But we are to know that Christ requires repentance first as the end to be aimed at, and faith in the next place, as the only means of attaining it, and, though the end is first in intention, yet the means are first in practice and execution, though both are absolutely necessary to salvation.
    - a. *[Luke 13:3]- I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.*
    - b. *[Mark 1:15]- And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel.*
    - c. *[John 14:6]- Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.*
    - d. *[Acts 19:4]- Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.*

2. Regeneration also is necessary to salvation (John 3:3) and, therefore, many would find it wrought in themselves before they trust on Christ for their salvation. But consider what regeneration is. It is a new begetting or creating us in Christ, in whom we are partakers of a divine nature far different from that which we received from the first Adam.
  - a. ***[1 Corinthians 4:15]- For though ye have ten thousand instructors in Christ, yet have ye not many fathers: for in Christ Jesus I have begotten you through the gospel.***
  - b. ***[Ephesians 2:10]- For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.***
  - c. ***[John 1:12-13]- But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name: Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.***
  
3. They account it necessary to receive Christ as their Lord and Lawgiver, by a sincere resignation of themselves to His government any a resolution to obey His law, before they receive Him as their Saviour.
  - a. ***[Luke 19:27]- But those mine enemies, which would not that I should reign over them, bring hither, and slay them before me.***
  
4. But yet we must observe that they are not brought to this holy resignation, or to any sincere purpose and resolution of obedience, before they receive His salvation, but rather by receiving it.
  - a. ***[Romans 8:7]- Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.***
  - b. ***[2 Corinthians 5:14]- For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead:***
  - c. ***[Psalm 116:16]- O LORD, truly I am thy servant; I am thy servant, and the son of thine handmaid: thou hast loosed my bonds.***
  
5. It seems to them evident that some good works are necessary, before we can trust on Christ safely for the forgiveness of sins, because our Saviour teaches us that, if we do not forgive men their trespasses, neither will our heavenly Father forgive our trespasses, and directs us to pray, 'Forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors'.
  - a. ***[Matthew 6:12,15]- And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors. But if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.***
  - b. ***[Leviticus 6:5,7]- Or all that about which he hath sworn falsely; he shall even restore it in the principal, and shall add the fifth part more thereto, and give it unto him to whom it appertaineth, in the day of his trespass offering. And the priest shall make an atonement for him before the LORD: and it shall be forgiven him for any thing of all that he hath done in trespassing therein.***
  - c. ***[Exodus 14:5]- And it was told the king of Egypt that the people fled: and the heart of Pharaoh and of his servants was turned against the people, and they said, Why have we done this, that we have let Israel go from serving us?***
  - d. ***[Ephesians 4:32]- And be ye kind one to another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ's sake hath forgiven you.***
  
- D.** It is likely you will answer, in the bitterness of your soul, *'O let me have first some love to God and godliness in my heart, and freedom from my hateful heart-risings against Him and His service! Let me have some good thoughts of God, His justice, mercy, holiness, that I may be able to justify Him though He damn me, and that I may not be filled with murmuring and hellish blasphemies in my mind against Him. Let the raging of my lust be abated, and the stinking kennel of my wicked heart a little cleansed. Let me have some holy reverential fear of God, and not only a panic tormenting horror. I would be more affected with the wrath of God, and not be of a slighting heedless spirit. I would be more humbled for sin, loathe it, and be ashamed of, and be sorry for it with a godly sorrow, not merely because of the punishment, but because it grieves and vexes the Holy Spirit of*

God. I would be able to make a willing and ingenuous confession of sin, and to pour out my soul to the Lord in lively affectionate prayer for forgiveness, and to praise and glorify Him heartily, and not be like a lifeless stone in the duty of prayer, as I am.’

1. *[1 John 4:19]- We love him, because he first loved us.*
2. *[1 Timothy 1:5]- Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned:*
3. *[1 Corinthians 13:5]- Doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil;*
4. *[Acts 15:9]- And put no difference between us and them, purifying their hearts by faith.*
5. *[Galatians 5:6]- For in Jesus Christ neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision; but faith which worketh by love.*
6. *[Hebrews 4:1]- Let us therefore fear, lest, a promise being left us of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it.*
7. *[Hebrews 12:28]- Wherefore we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear:*
8. *[Hosea 3:5]- Afterward shall the children of Israel return, and seek the LORD their God, and David their king; and shall fear the LORD and his goodness in the latter days.*

E. If you would be free from carelessness and slighting the wrath of God, your way is first, by believing, to avoid despairing, for people grow careless by despairing and, for their own quiet, they will endeavor to slight evils, which they have no hope to prevent, according to the proverb.

1. *[1 Corinthians 15:32]- If after the manner of men I have fought with beasts at Ephesus, what advantageth it me, if the dead rise not? let us eat and drink; for to morrow we die.*
2. *[Ezekiel 36:31]- Then shall ye remember your own evil ways, and your doings that were not good, and shall lothe yourselves in your own sight for your iniquities and for your abominations.*
3. *[Philippians 3:7-8]- But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ. Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,*
4. *[Luke 7:37-38]- And, behold, a woman in the city, which was a sinner, when she knew that Jesus sat at meat in the Pharisee's house, brought an alabaster box of ointment, And stood at his feet behind him weeping, and began to wash his feet with tears, and did wipe them with the hairs of her head, and kissed his feet, and anointed them with the ointment.*
5. *[Mark 1: 4-5]- John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins. And there went out unto him all the land of Judaea, and they of Jerusalem, and were all baptized of him in the river of Jordan, confessing their sins.*
6. *[1 John 1:9]- If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.*
7. *[John 16:23-24]- And in that day ye shall ask me nothing. Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, he will give it you. Hitherto have ye asked nothing in my name: ask, and ye shall receive, that your joy may be full.*
8. *[Romans 10:14]- How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher?*
9. *[Hebrews 13:10,15]- We have an altar, whereof they have no right to eat which serve the tabernacle. By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name.*
10. *[John 6:28-29]- Then said they unto him, What shall we do, that we might work the works of God? Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.*

VIII. *Be sure to seek for holiness of heart and life only in its due order, where God has placed it, after union with Christ, justification and the gift of the Holy Ghost and, in that order, seek it earnestly by faith as a very necessary part of your salvation.*

A. Firstly, it is a matter of high concern, to be acquainted with the due place and order in which God has settled this holy practice in the mystery of our salvation, and a great point of Christian wisdom to seek it only in that order.

1. *[2 Samuel 23:5]- Although my house be not so with God; yet he hath made with me an everlasting covenant, ordered in all things, and sure: for this is all my salvation, and all my desire, although he make it not to grow.*
2. *[John 15:4-5]- Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in me. I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.*
3. *[Hebrews 9:14]- How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?*
4. *[Galatians 5:25]- If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.*
5. *[1 Chronicles 13:10]- And the anger of the LORD was kindled against Uzza, and he smote him, because he put his hand to the ark: and there he died before God.*

B. Secondly, we are to look upon holiness as a very necessary part of that salvation that is received by faith in Christ.

1. *[Ezekiel 36:29]- I will also save you from all your uncleannesses: and I will call for the corn, and will increase it, and lay no famine upon you.*
2. *[Titus 3:5]- Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;*
3. *[Matthew 1:21]- And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name JESUS: for he shall save his people from their sins.*
4. *[Ephesians 2:10]- For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.*
5. *[Galatians 5:13]- For, brethren, ye have been called unto liberty; only use not liberty for an occasion to the flesh, but by love serve one another.*
6. *[Romans 7: 6]- But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.*
7. *[Hebrews 12:14]- Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord:*
8. *[Matthew 3:11]- I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance. but he that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and with fire:*
9. *[Luke 23:40,43]- But the other answering rebuked him, saying, Dost not thou fear God, seeing thou art in the same condemnation? And Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, Today shalt thou be with me in paradise.*

C. The third and last thing to be noted in this direction is that holiness of heart and life is to be sought for earnestly by faith, as a very necessary part of our salvation.

1. *[John 13:8]- Peter saith unto him, Thou shalt never wash my feet. Jesus answered him, If I wash thee not, thou hast no part with me.*
2. *[1 Corinthians 1:13]- Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were ye baptized in the name of Paul?*



3. *[Psalm 143:10]- Teach me to do thy will; for thou art my God: thy spirit is good; lead me into the land of uprightness.*
4. *[Jeremiah 31:18]- I have surely heard Ephraim bemoaning himself thus; Thou hast chastised me, and I was chastised, as a bullock unaccustomed to the yoke: turn thou me, and I shall be turned; for thou art the LORD my God.*
5. *[Psalm 51:10]- Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me.*

IX. *We must first receive the comforts of the gospel, that we may be able to sincerely perform the duties of the law.*

A. Proof texts

1. *[2 Timothy 2:6]- The husbandman that laboureth must be first partaker of the fruits.*
2. *[Ezekiel 13:16,22]- To wit, the prophets of Israel which prophesy concerning Jerusalem, and which see visions of peace for her, and there is no peace, saith the Lord GOD. Because with lies ye have made the heart of the righteous sad, whom I have not made sad; and strengthened the hands of the wicked, that he should not return from his wicked way, by promising him life:*
3. *[Psalm 71:21]- Thou shalt increase my greatness, and comfort me on every side.*

B. Common objections.

1. This truth is a clear consequtary (i.e. consequence) from those principles of holiness that have been already confirmed. I have shown that we must have a good persuasion of our reconciliation with God, and of our happiness in heaven, and of our sufficient strength both to will and to do that which is acceptable to God through Jesus Christ, that we may be rationally inclined and bent to the practice of holiness.
2. Peace, joy, hope are recommended to us in Scripture as the spring of other holy duties; and fear and oppressing grief forbidden as hindrances to true religion:
  - a. *[Philippians 4:7]- And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.*
  - b. *[Nehemiah 8:10]- Then he said unto them, Go your way, eat the fat, and drink the sweet, and send portions unto them for whom nothing is prepared: for this day is holy unto our LORD: neither be ye sorry; for the joy of the LORD is your strength.*
  - c. *[1 John 3:3]- And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.*
  - d. *[1 John 4:18]- There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love.*
  - e. *[Philippians 4:4]- Rejoice in the Lord always: and again I say, Rejoice.*
3. The usual method of gospel doctrine, as it is delivered to us in the Holy Scriptures, is first, to comfort our hearts, and in this way to establish us in every good word and work.
  - a. *[2 Thessalonians 2:17]- Comfort your hearts, and stablish you in every good word and work.*
  - b. *[Romans 6:11,14]- Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord. For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.*
  - c. *[Romans 8:9,11]- But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his. But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.*

- d. *[1 Corinthians 6:15,19]- Know ye not that your bodies are the members of Christ? shall I then take the members of Christ, and make them the members of an harlot? God forbid. What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?*
  - e. *[Ephesians 4:32]- And be ye kind one to another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ's sake hath forgiven you.*
  - f. *[Ephesians 5:1,2,8]- Be ye therefore followers of God, as dear children; And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savour. For ye were sometimes darkness, but now are ye light in the Lord: walk as children of light:*
  - g. *[Colossians 3:1,4]- If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.*
  - h. *[Hebrews 13:5]- Let your conversation be without covetousness; and be content with such things as ye have: for he hath said, I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee.*
  - i. *[Luke 10:5]- And into whatsoever house ye enter, first say, Peace be to this house.*
  - j. *[Acts 3:26]- Unto you first God, having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities.*
  - k. *[Acts 13:26, 32, 38]- Men and brethren, children of the stock of Abraham, and whosoever among you feareth God, to you is the word of this salvation sent. And we declare unto you glad tidings, how that the promise which was made unto the fathers, Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:*
  - l. *[Acts 16:30,31]- And brought them out, and said, Sirs, what must I do to be saved? And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.*
  - m. *[2 Thessalonians 2:16]- Now our Lord Jesus Christ himself, and God, even our Father, which hath loved us, and hath given us everlasting consolation and good hope through grace,*
4. The nature of the duties of the law requires a comfortable state of the soul for the performance of them. I have before proved sufficiently that they require a persuasion of our reconciliation with God, and of our future happiness, and strength by which we may be able to walk in holy obedience.
- a. *[Joshua 1:7]- Only be thou strong and very courageous, that thou mayest observe to do according to all the law, which Moses my servant commanded thee: turn not from it to the right hand or to the left, that thou mayest prosper withersoever thou goest.*
  - b. *[Romans 5:1-3]- Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ: By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God. And not only so, but we glory in tribulations also: knowing that tribulation worketh patience;*
5. The state of those that are to be brought from sin to godliness requires necessarily that, after they be convinced of the vanity of their former false confidences, and of their deadness in original sin and subjection to the wrath of God, they should have a supply of new gospel comforts afforded, to encourage their fainting souls to holy practices.
- a. *[Nehemiah 8:10]- Then he said unto them, Go your way, eat the fat, and drink the sweet, and send portions unto them for whom nothing is prepared: for this day is holy unto our LORD: neither be ye sorry; for the joy of the LORD is your strength.*

6. Both Scripture and experience show that this is the method by which God brings His people from sin to holiness. Though some of them are brought under terrors for a while, that sin may be the more embittered, and the salvation of Christ rendered more precious and acceptable to them, yet such are again delivered from their terrors by the comforts of God's salvation, that they may be fitted for holiness.
  - a. *[Psalm 16:8-9]- I have set the LORD always before me: because he is at my right hand, I shall not be moved. Therefore my heart is glad, and my glory rejoiceth: my flesh also shall rest in hope.*
  - b. *[Hosea 11:4]- I drew them with cords of a man, with bands of love: and I was to them as they that take off the yoke on their jaws, and I laid meat unto them.*
  - c. *[Psalm 26:3]- For thy lovingkindness is before mine eyes: and I have walked in thy truth.*
  - d. *[Psalm 119:166]- LORD, I have hoped for thy salvation, and done thy commandments.*
  - e. *[Acts 2:41]- Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.*
  - f. *[1 Thessalonians 1:4-6]- Knowing, brethren beloved, your election of God. For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake. And ye became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Ghost.*
  - g. *[Acts 13:48]- And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.*
  - h. *[2 Corinthians 5:14-15]- For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead: And that he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.*
  
7. What comfortless religion do those make that allow people no comfort beforehand, to strengthen them for holy performances, which are very cross, displeasing and grievous to their natural inclinations, as the plucking out a right eye, cutting off a right hand; but would have them first to do such things with love and delight, under all their present fears, despondencies and corrupt inclinations, and to hope that, by doing the work thoroughly and sincerely, they shall at last attain to a more comfortable state?
  - a. *[Romans 4:14-15]- For if they which are of the law be heirs, faith is made void, and the promise made of none effect: Because the law worketh wrath: for where no law is, there is no transgression.*
  - b. *[Luke 2:10]- And the angel said unto them, Fear not: for, behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy, which shall be to all people.*
  - c. *[2 Corinthians 1:3]- Blessed be God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies, and the God of all comfort;*
  - d. *[Luke 2:25]- And, behold, there was a man in Jerusalem, whose name was Simeon; and the same man was just and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel: and the Holy Ghost was upon him.*
  - e. *[John 14:16-17]- And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever; Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.*
  - f. *[Isaiah 64:5]- Thou meetest him that rejoiceth and worketh righteousness, those that remember thee in thy ways: behold, thou art wroth; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we shall be saved.*

- g. *[John 15:11]- These things have I spoken unto you, that my joy might remain in you, and that your joy might be full.*
- h. *[Proverbs 3:17]- Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.*

X. *That we may be prepared by the comforts of the gospel to perform sincerely the duties of the law, we must get some assurance of our salvation in that very faith by which Christ Himself is received into our hearts. Therefore, we must endeavor to believe on Christ confidently, persuading and assuring ourselves, in the act of believing, that God freely gives to us an interest in Christ and His salvation, according to His gracious promise.*

- A. Some observations for the right understanding of assurance, which will be sufficient to turn the edge of the strongest objections that can be made against it.
  - 1. The assurance directed to is not a persuasion that we have already received Christ and His salvation, or that we have been already brought into a state of grace, but only that ‘God is pleased graciously to give Christ and His salvation to us, and to bring us to a state of grace, though we have been altogether in a state of sin and death until this present time’, so that this doctrine does not at all tend to breed presumption in wicked and unregenerate men that their state is good already, but only encourages them to come to Christ confidently for a good state.
    - a. *[Romans 9:25-26]- As he saith also in Osee, I will call them my people, which were not my people; and her beloved, which was not beloved. And it shall come to pass, that in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people; there shall they be called the children of the living God.*
  - 2. The assurance directed to is not a persuasion of our salvation, whatever we do, or however we live and walk, but only in a limited way, through mere free grace in Christ, by partaking of holiness as well as forgiveness and by walking in the way of holiness to the enjoyment of the glory of God. The assurance directed to is not a persuasion of our salvation, whatever we do, or however we live and walk, but only in a limited way, through mere free grace in Christ, by partaking of holiness as well as forgiveness and by walking in the way of holiness to the enjoyment of the glory of God.
    - a. *[Philippians 3:3]- For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh.*
    - b. *[1 Corinthians 15:58]- Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye stedfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.*
    - c. *[Psalm 32:9]- Be ye not as the horse, or as the mule, which have no understanding: whose mouth must be held in with bit and bridle, lest they come near unto thee.*
  - 3. Beware of thinking so highly of this assurance as if it were inconsistent with any doubting in the same soul.
    - a. *[Galatians 5:17]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*
    - b. *[Romans 7:23]- But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members.*
    - c. *[Mark 9:24]- And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief.*
    - d. *[1 Thessalonians 1:5]- For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake.*

- e. *[Matthew 14:29-31]- And he said, Come. And when Peter was come down out of the ship, he walked on the water, to go to Jesus. But when he saw the wind boisterous, he was afraid; and beginning to sink, he cried, saying, Lord, save me. And immediately Jesus stretched forth his hand, and caught him, and said unto him, O thou of little faith, wherefore didst thou doubt?*
  - f. *[Psalm 42:11]- Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted within me? hope thou in God: for I shall yet praise him, who is the health of my countenance, and my God.*
  - g. *[Psalm 77:10]- And I said, This is my infirmity: but I will remember the years of the right hand of the most High.*
4. The reason why we are to assure ourselves in our faith that ‘God freely gives Christ and salvation to us particularly’ is not because it is a truth before we believe it, but because it becomes a certain truth when we believe it, and because it will never be true, except we do, in some measure, persuade and assure ourselves that it is so.
- a. *[Romans 4:17]- (As it is written, I have made thee a father of many nations,) before him whom he believed, even God, who quickeneth the dead, and calleth those things which be not as though they were.*
  - b. *[Mark 11:24]- Therefore I say unto you, What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them.*
  - c. *[Lamentations 3:37]- Who is he that saith, and it cometh to pass, when the Lord commandeth it not?*
  - d. *[Mark 11:22-23]- And Jesus answering saith unto them, Have faith in God. For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things which he saith shall come to pass; he shall have whatsoever he saith.*
- B.** Several arguments to prove that ‘there is, and must necessarily be, such an assurance or persuasion of our salvation in saving faith itself’.
- I.** This assurance of salvation is implied in the description before given of that faith by which we receive Christ and His salvation into our hearts.
- a. *[Romans 4:20]- He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God;*
  - b. *[Hebrews 10:23]- Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; (for he is faithful that promised;)*
  - c. *[Matthew 14:31]- And immediately Jesus stretched forth his hand, and caught him, and said unto him, O thou of little faith, wherefore didst thou doubt?*
  - d. *[Psalm 31:14]- But I trusted in thee, O LORD: I said, Thou art my God.*
  - e. *[Psalm 18:2]- The LORD is my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; my God, my strength, in whom I will trust; my buckler, and the horn of my salvation, and my high tower.*
  - f. *[Isaiah 12:2]- Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the LORD JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also is become my salvation.*
  - g. *[Psalm 42:11]- Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted within me? hope thou in God: for I shall yet praise him, who is the health of my countenance, and my God.*
  - h. *[Hebrews 6:17-19]- Wherein God, willing more abundantly to shew unto the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath: That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us: Which hope we have as*

*an anchor of the soul, both sure and stedfast, and which entereth into that within the veil;*

- i. *[Isaiah 50:10]- Who is among you that feareth the LORD, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? let him trust in the name of the LORD, and stay upon his God.*
  - j. *[Psalm 116:7]- Return unto thy rest, O my soul; for the LORD hath dealt bountifully with thee.*
  - k. *[James 1:6,8]- But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. A double minded man is unstable in all his ways.*
2. Several places of Scripture declare positively and expressly that we are to be assured of our salvation in that faith by which we are justified and saved.
- a. *[Hebrews 10:22]- Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.*
  - b. *[Hebrews 11:1]- Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.*
  - c. *[Hebrews 3:6,14]- But Christ as a son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end. For we are made partakers of Christ, if we hold the beginning of our confidence stedfast unto the end;*
  - d. *[Rom. 4:18,19,23,24]- Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations, according to that which was spoken, So shall thy seed be. And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about an hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sarah's womb: Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him; But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead;*
  - e. *[James 1:6-7]- But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord.*
  - f. *[Mark 11:24]- Therefore I say unto you, What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them.*
3. God gives us sufficient ground in Scripture to come to Christ with confident faith at the very first, trusting assuredly that Christ and His salvation shall be given to us, without any failing and delay, however vile and sinful our condition has been before.
- a. *[Acts 2:39]- For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the LORD our God shall call.*
  - b. *[Acts 3:26]- Unto you first God, having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities.*
  - c. *[Romans 10:11-12]- For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed. For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.*
  - d. *[John 3:14-16]- And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up: That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life. For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.*
  - e. *[John 7:37,39]- In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink. (But this spake he of the Spirit,*

*which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)*

- f. *[Acts 16:31]- And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.*
  - g. *[Jeremiah 3:4]- Wilt thou not from this time cry unto me, My father, thou art the guide of my youth?*
  - h. *[Hosea 2:23]- And I will sow her unto me in the earth; and I will have mercy upon her that had not obtained mercy; and I will say to them which were not my people, Thou art my people; and they shall say, Thou art my God.*
  - i. *[Isaiah 30:15]- For thus saith the Lord GOD, the Holy One of Israel; In returning and rest shall ye be saved; in quietness and in confidence shall be your strength: and ye would not.*
  - j. *[I John 5:10-11]- He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son. And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.*
  - k. *[Deuteronomy 1:20-21,29-30]- And I said unto you, Ye are come unto the mountain of the Amorites, which the LORD our God doth give unto us. Behold, the LORD thy God hath set the land before thee: go up and possess it, as the LORD God of thy fathers hath said unto thee; fear not, neither be discouraged. Then I said unto you, Dread not, neither be afraid of them. The LORD your God which goeth before you, he shall fight for you, according to all that he did for you in Egypt before your eyes;*
  - l. *[Hebrews 4:1,11]- Let us therefore fear, lest, a promise being left us of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it. Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief.*
4. The professors of true godliness that we read of through the Scriptures of the Old and New Testament commonly professed their assurance and persuasion of their interest in God and His salvation,
- a. *[Exodus 15:2]- The LORD is my strength and song, and he is become my salvation: he is my God, and I will prepare him an habitation; my father's God, and I will exalt him.*
  - b. *[Psalm 106:12]- Then believed they his words; they sang his praise.*
  - c. *[Hebrews 10:39]- But we are not of them who draw back unto perdition; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul.*
  - d. *[Psalm 42:11]- Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted within me? hope thou in God: for I shall yet praise him, who is the health of my countenance, and my God.*
  - e. *[Psalm 1:2]- But his delight is in the law of the LORD; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.*
  - f. *[Psalm 78:7,10]- That they might set their hope in God, and not forget the works of God, but keep his commandments: They kept not the covenant of God, and refused to walk in his law;*
  - g. *[Psalm 88:1]- O lord God of my salvation, I have cried day and night before thee:*
  - h. *[Romans 9.1]- I say the truth in Christ, I lie not, my conscience also bearing me witness in the Holy Ghost,*
  - i. *[Romans 8:15-17]- For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.*

- j. *[Galatians 4:6]- And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.*
- k. *[Ephesians 1:13-14]- In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory.*
- l. *[Galatians 3:2]- In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory.*
- m. Several other evidences to show that believers generally were persuaded of their salvation in the apostles' time.
  - 1.) They loved and waited for the coming of Christ to judge the world.
    - a.) *[1 Corinthians 1:7]- So that ye come behind in no gift; waiting for the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ:*
    - b.) *[2 Timothy 4:8]- Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.*
  - 2.) They loved all the saints for the hope that was laid up for them in heaven.
    - a.) *[Colossians 1:3-5]- We give thanks to God and the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, praying always for you, Since we heard of your faith in Christ Jesus, and of the love which ye have to all the saints, For the hope which is laid up for you in heaven, whereof ye heard before in the word of the truth of the gospel;*
  - 3.) The Corinthians, that were very carnal and but babes in Christ, were persuaded that they should judge the world and angels, and that their bodies were members of Christ and the temples of the Holy Ghost.
    - a.) *[1 Corinthians 6:2-3,15,19]- Do ye not know that the saints shall judge the world? and if the world shall be judged by you, are ye unworthy to judge the smallest matters? Know ye not that we shall judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life? Know ye not that your bodies are the members of Christ? shall I then take the members of Christ, and make them the members of an harlot? God forbid. What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?*
  - 4.) The very first coming of the gospel to the Thessalonians was 'in the Holy Ghost', and 'much assurance', so 'that they received it in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Ghost,' when as yet they had no considerable time to get assurance by reflecting on their good qualifications.
    - a.) *[1 Thessalonians 1:5-6]- For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake. And ye became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Ghost.*
  - 5.) Likewise, the believing Hebrews, when they were luminated at their first conversion, 'took joyfully the spoiling of their goods, knowing that they had in heaven a better and an enduring substance,' and this was their confidence, which they were not to cast off,



because the just lives by faith. And therefore it appears that this confidence belongs necessarily to justifying saving faith.

a.) *[Hebrews 10:34-35,38]- For ye had compassion of me in my bonds, and took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance. Cast not away therefore your confidence, which hath great recompence of reward. Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him.*

5. The chief office of this faith in its direct saving act is to receive Christ and His salvation actually into our hearts, as has been proved; which office cannot be rationally performed except we do, in some measure, persuade our hearts and assure ourselves in the enjoyment of Him.
6. It is also a great and necessary office of saving faith to purify the heart, and to enable us to live and walk in the practice of all holy duties by the grace of Christ, and by Christ Himself living in us, as has been shown before; which office faith is not able to perform, except some assurance of our own interest in Christ and His salvation be comprehended in the nature of it.
  - a. *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
  - b. *[Galatians 5:25]- If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.*
  - c. *[Galatians 5:6]- For in Jesus Christ neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision; but faith which worketh by love.*
  - d. *[James 2:18]- Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works.*
7. The contrary doctrine, which excludes assurance out of the nature of saving faith, brings forth many evil fruits.
  - a. *[Isaiah 50:10]- Who is among you that feareth the LORD, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? let him trust in the name of the LORD, and stay upon his God.*

XI. Endeavor diligently to perform the great work of believing on Christ in a right manner, without any delay; and then also continue and increase in your most holy faith, that so your enjoyment of Christ, union and fellowship with Him, and all holiness by Him, may be begun, continued and increased in you.

A. Proof text

1. *[John 6:28-29]- Then said they unto him, What shall we do, that we might work the works of God? Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.*

B. Put you upon the performance of this great work of believing on Christ and to guide you therein, for you are to consider distinctly four things contained in it.

1. To make it your diligent endeavor to perform the great work of believing on Christ.
  - a. *[Romans 1:5]- By whom we have received grace and apostleship, for obedience to the faith among all nations, for his name:*
  - b. *[2 Timothy 3:15]- And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.*
  - c. *[Romans 10:4]- For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.*

- d. *[Hebrews 11:6]- But without faith it is impossible to please him: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.*
  - e. *[John 3:36]- He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.*
  - f. *[2 Thessalonians 1:7-8]- And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ:*
2. Believing on Christ is a work that will require diligent endeavor and labor for the performance of it.
- a. *[Hebrews 4:11]- Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief.*
  - b. *[Hebrews 6:11-12]- And we desire that every one of you do shew the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end: That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises.*
  - c. *[Ephesians 3:16-17]- That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man; That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love,*
  - d. *[Exodus 14:13]- And Moses said unto the people, Fear ye not, stand still, and see the salvation of the LORD, which he will shew to you to day: for the Egyptians whom ye have seen to day, ye shall see them again no more for ever.*
  - e. *[2 Kings 5:12-13]- Are not Abana and Pharpar, rivers of Damascus, better than all the waters of Israel? may I not wash in them, and be clean? So he turned and went away in a rage. And his servants came near, and spake unto him, and said, My father, if the prophet had bid thee do some great thing, wouldest thou not have done it? how much rather then, when he saith to thee, Wash, and be clean?*
  - f. *[Matthew 19:17,20]- And he said unto him, Why callest thou me good? there is none good but one, that is, God: but if thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments. The young man saith unto him, All these things have I kept from my youth up: what lack I yet?*
  - g. *[Acts 15:10]- Now therefore why tempt ye God, to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples, which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?*
  - h. *[Deuteronomy 12:31]- Thou shalt not do so unto the LORD thy God: for every abomination to the LORD, which he hateth, have they done unto their gods; for even their sons and their daughters they have burnt in the fire to their gods.*
3. Though we cannot possibly perform this great work in a right manner, until the Spirit of God work faith in our hearts by His mighty power, yet it is necessary that we should endeavor it; and that before we can find the Spirit of God working faith effectually in us, or giving strength to believe.
- a. *[Philippians 2:12-13]- Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling. For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure.*
  - b. *[Romans 10:17]- So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.*
  - c. *[John 3:8]- The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh, and whither it goeth: so is every one that is born of the Spirit.*
  - d. *[Psalm 110:3]- Thy people shall be willing in the day of thy power, in the beauties of holiness from the womb of the morning: thou hast the dew of thy youth.*

- e. *[Joshua 1:6]- Be strong and of a good courage: for unto this people shalt thou divide for an inheritance the land, which I swear unto their fathers to give them.*
  - f. *[1 Chronicles 22:16]- Of the gold, the silver, and the brass, and the iron, there is no number. Arise therefore, and be doing, and the LORD be with thee.*
  - g. *[John 6:45]- It is written in the prophets, And they shall be all taught of God. Every man therefore that hath heard, and hath learned of the Father, cometh unto me.*
4. Though the Spirit works saving faith only in the elect, and others do not believe because they are not of Christ's sheep, and on that account it is called the faith of God's elect; yet all that hear the gospel are obliged to the duty of believing, as well as to all the duties of the moral law, and that before they know their own particular election, and they are liable to condemnation for unbelief, as well as for any other sin:
- a. *[John 10:26]- But ye believe not, because ye are not of my sheep, as I said unto you.*
  - b. *[Titus 1:1]- Paul, a servant of God, and an apostle of Jesus Christ, according to the faith of God's elect, and the acknowledging of the truth which is after godliness;*
  - c. *[Romans 11:7,20]- What then? Israel hath not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election hath obtained it, and the rest were blinded. Well; because of unbelief they were broken off, and thou standest by faith. Be not highminded, but fear:*
  - d. *[1 Thessalonians 1:4-6]- Knowing, brethren beloved, your election of God. For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake. And ye became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Ghost.*
  - e. *[1 Corinthians 1:26-27]- For ye see your calling, brethren, how that not many wise men after the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble, are called: But God hath chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise; and God hath chosen the weak things of the world to confound the things which are mighty;*
  - f. *[Romans 10:11-12]- For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed. For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.*
  - g. *[John 6:37]- All that the Father giveth me shall come to me; and him that cometh to me I will in no wise cast out.*
  - h. *[1 Peter 2:8]- And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed.*
  - i. *[Ephesians 1:3-4]- Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ: According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:*
  - j. *[Psalm 106:4-5]- Remember me, O LORD, with the favour that thou bearest unto thy people: O visit me with thy salvation; That I may see the good of thy chosen, that I may rejoice in the gladness of thy nation, that I may glory with thine inheritance.*
  - k. *[Deuteronomy 29:29]- The secret things belong unto the LORD our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this law.*
5. You shall endeavour for a right manner of performing this duty.
- a. *[1 Timothy 1:5]- Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned:*

- b. *[Acts 8:13,23]- Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done. For I perceive that thou art in the gall of bitterness, and in the bond of iniquity.*
  - c. *[John 2:24]- But Jesus did not commit himself unto them, because he knew all men,*
  - d. *[John 12:42]- Nevertheless among the chief rulers also many believed on him; but because of the Pharisees they did not confess him, lest they should be put out of the synagogue:*
  - e. *[James 2:14,19]- What doth it profit, my brethren, though a man say he hath faith, and have not works? can faith save him? Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.*
  - f. The way to distinguish the one from the other is by considering well *what is the right manner of that believing which is effectual to salvation*. Hypocrites may perform the same works for the matter, with true saints, but they are defective in the manner of performance, wherein the excellency of the work does chiefly consist.
    - 1.) *[Luke 13:24]- Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able.*
    - 2.) *[Psalm 25:8-9]- Good and upright is the LORD: therefore will he teach sinners in the way. The meek will he guide in judgment: and the meek will he teach his way.*
    - 3.) *[James 1:5-6]- If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him. But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed.*
6. *Believing the truth of the gospel;*
- a. *[2 Corinthians 11:3]- But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtilty, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.*
  - b. You must believe with a full persuasion that you are a child of wrath by nature, as well as others, fallen from God by the sin of the first Adam; dead in trespasses and sins, subject to the curse of the law of God, and to the power of Satan, and to insupportable misery to all eternity; and that you cannot possibly procure your reconciliation with God, or any spiritual life and strength to do any good work, by any endeavoring to get salvation according to the terms of the legal covenant; and that you cannot find any way to escape out of this sinful and miserable condition by your own reason and understanding, without supernatural revelation, nor be freed from it, except by that infinite power that raises the dead.
    - 1.) *[Jeremiah 17:9]- The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it?*
    - 2.) *[Matthew 9:12]- But when Jesus heard that, he said unto them, They that be whole need not a physician, but they that are sick.*
    - 3.) *[Matthew 21:31]- Whether of them twain did the will of his father? They say unto him, The first. Jesus saith unto them, Verily I say unto you, That the publicans and the harlots go into the kingdom of God before you.*
  - c. You are to believe assuredly that there is no way to be saved without receiving all the saving benefits of Christ: His Spirit as well as His merits, sanctification as well as remission of sins, by faith.
    - 1.) *[Romans 8:1]- There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.*
    - 2.) *[Hebrews 12:14]- Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord:*

- d. You are to be fully persuaded of *the all-sufficiency of Christ* for the salvation of yourself, and of all that believe on Him; that His blood cleanses from all sin.
- 1.) *[1 John 1:7]- But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.*
  - 2.) *[1 Corinthians 6:9-10]- Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind, Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.*
  - 3.) *[Ezekiel 33:10]- Therefore, O thou son of man, speak unto the house of Israel; Thus ye speak, saying, If our transgressions and our sins be upon us, and we pine away in them, how should we then live?*
  - 4.) *[Matthew 12:31]- Wherefore I say unto you, All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men.*
  - 5.) *[Hebrews 6:5-6]- And have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come, If they shall fall away, to renew them again unto repentance; seeing they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame.*
  - 6.) *[Mark 5:25-28]- And a certain woman, which had an issue of blood twelve years, And had suffered many things of many physicians, and had spent all that she had, and was nothing bettered, but rather grew worse, When she had heard of Jesus, came in the press behind, and touched his garment. For she said, If I may touch but his clothes, I shall be whole.*
- e. You are to be fully persuaded of the truth of the general free promise, in your own particular case, that if you believe on Christ sincerely, you shall have everlasting life, as well as any other in the world, without performing any condition of works to procure an interest in Christ, for the promise is universal: ‘Whoever believes on Him, shall not be ashamed’, without exception.
- 1.) *[Romans 9:33]- As it is written, Behold, I lay in Sion a stumblingstone and rock of offence: and whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.*
  - 2.) *[1 Timothy 1:15]- This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptation, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners; of whom I am chief.*
  - 3.) *[Ephesians 2:7]- That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.*
  - 4.) *[Romans 8:7]- Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.*
  - 5.) *[Genesis 6:5]- And God saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually.*
  - 6.) *[Hebrews 12:17]- For ye know how that afterward, when he would have inherited the blessing, he was rejected: for he found no place of repentance, though he sought it carefully with tears.*
  - 7.) *[2 Corinthians 6:2]- (For he saith, I have heard thee in a time accepted, and in the day of salvation have I succoured thee: behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation.)*
  - 8.) *[Matthew 20:9-10]- And when they came that were hired about the eleventh hour, they received every man a penny. But when the first came, they supposed that they should have received more; and they likewise received every man a penny.*
  - 9.) *[Romans 4:5]- But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.*

- f. You are to believe assuredly that *it is the will of God you should believe in Christ*, and have eternal life by Him, as well as any other; and that your believing is a duty very acceptable to God; and that He will help you, as well as any other, in this work, because He calls and commands you by the gospel to believe in Christ.
- 1.) *[Mark 10:49]- And Jesus stood still, and commanded him to be called. And they call the blind man, saying unto him, Be of good comfort, rise; he calleth thee.*
  - 2.) *[Matthew 14:29]- And he said, Come. And when Peter was come down out of the ship, he walked on the water, to go to Jesus.*
  - 3.) *[Ezekiel 33:11]- Say unto them, As I live, saith the Lord GOD, I have no pleasure in the death of the wicked; but that the wicked turn from his way and live: turn ye, turn ye from your evil ways; for why will ye die, O house of Israel?*
  - 4.) *[Matthew 23:37]- O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!*
  - 5.) *[1 Timothy 2:4]- Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.*
  - 6.) *[Matthew 15:26]- But he answered and said, It is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast it to dogs.*
  - 7.) *[Romans 10:4]- For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.*
  - 8.) *[Jeremiah 18:7-8,11]- At what instant I shall speak concerning a nation, and concerning a kingdom, to pluck up, and to pull down, and to destroy it; If that nation, against whom I have pronounced, turn from their evil, I will repent of the evil that I thought to do unto them. Now therefore go to, speak to the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, saying, Thus saith the LORD; Behold, I frame evil against you, and devise a device against you: return ye now every one from his evil way, and make your ways and your doings good.*
  - 9.) *[Jonah 3:4]- And Jonah began to enter into the city a day's journey, and he cried, and said, Yet forty days, and Nineveh shall be overthrown.*
  - 10.) *[Revelation 22:17]- And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.*
- g. You are to have a full persuasion of the incomparable glorious excellency of Christ, and of the way of salvation by Him.
- 1.) *[Philippians 3:8]- Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,*
  - 2.) *[1 Peter 2:7]- Unto you therefore which believe he is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner,*
  - 3.) *[Matthew 13:46]- Who, when he had found one pearl of great price, went and sold all that he had, and bought it.*
  - 4.) *[John 6:33-34,68]- For the bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, and giveth life unto the world. Then said they unto him, Lord, evermore give us this bread. Then Simon Peter answered him, Lord, to whom shall we go? thou hast the words of eternal life.*
  - 5.) *[Song of Solomon 1:3]- Because of the savour of thy good ointments thy name is as ointment poured forth, therefore do the virgins love thee.*

- 6.) *[Song of Solomon 5:8,10]- I charge you, O daughters of Jerusalem, if ye find my beloved, that ye tell him, that I am sick of love. My beloved is white and ruddy, the chiefest among ten thousand.*
- 7.) *[2 Corinthians 4:4]- In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.*
7. Believing on Christ as revealed and freely promised to us in the gospel, for all His salvation.
- a. Proof text.
- 1.) *[Romans 6:17]- But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin, but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you.*
- b. You are to believe in Christ as alone sufficient, and all sufficient for your happiness and salvation, despairing altogether of any attainment of happiness by our own wisdom, strength, works of righteousness, or any fleshly, worldly confidences whatever.
- 1.) *[Philippians 3:3,7-8]- For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh.*
- 2.) *[Galatians 5:2]- Behold, I Paul say unto you, that if ye be circumcised, Christ shall profit you nothing.*
- c. You are also to receive Christ merely as a free gift, given to the chief of sinners, resolving that you will not perform any conditions to procure yourselves a right and title to Him, but that you will come to Him as a lost sinner, an ungodly creature, trusting on ‘Him that justifies the ungodly’, and that you will ‘buy Him without money,’ and ‘without any price’ whatever.
- 1.) *[Romans 4:5]- But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.*
- 2.) *[Isaiah 55:2]- Wherefore do ye spend money for that which is not bread? and your labour for that which satisfieth not? hearken diligently unto me, and eat ye that which is good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness.*
- 3.) *[Psalm 36:7]- How excellent is thy lovingkindness, O God! therefore the children of men put their trust under the shadow of thy wings.*
- d. You must come to Christ for a new holy heart and life and all things necessary for this, as well as for deliverance from the wrath of God and the torments of hell.
- 1.) *[Psalm 73:25]- Whom have I in heaven but thee? and there is none upon earth that I desire beside thee.*
- e. You must endeavor to draw near with ‘full assurance of faith’ (Heb. 10:22), trusting on Christ confidently for your own particular salvation, upon the account of that general promise ‘that whoever believes on Christ shall not be ashamed’
- 1.) *[Hebrews 10:22]- Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.*
- 2.) *[Romans 9:33]- As it is written, Behold, I lay in Sion a stumblingstone and rock of offence: and whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.*
- 3.) *[Psalm 42: 11]- Why art thou cast down, O my soul? and why art thou disquieted within me? hope thou in God: for I shall yet praise him, who is the health of my countenance, and my God.*

- C. Avoiding all delay in the performance of this great work of believing in Christ.
1. *[Deuteronomy 19:5-6]- As when a man goeth into the wood with his neighbour to hew wood, and his hand fetcheth a stroke with the axe to cut down the tree, and the head slippeth from the helve, and lighteth upon his neighbour, that he die; he shall flee unto one of those cities, and live: Lest the avenger of the blood pursue the slayer, while his heart is hot, and overtake him, because the way is long, and slay him; whereas he was not worthy of death, inasmuch as he hated him not in time past.*
  2. *[Hebrews 6:18]- That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us:*
  3. *[Psalm 119:60]- I made haste, and delayed not to keep thy commandments.*
  4. *[Hebrews 6:18]- That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us:*
  5. *[Psalm 18:44]- As soon as they hear of me, they shall obey me: the strangers shall submit themselves unto me.*
  6. *[Isaiah 66:8]- Who hath heard such a thing? who hath seen such things? Shall the earth be made to bring forth in one day? or shall a nation be born at once? for as soon as Zion travailed, she brought forth her children.*
  7. *[Acts 2: 41]- Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.*
  8. *[Acts 13:48]- And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.*
  9. *[Acts 16: 33-34]- And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed their stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway. And when he had brought them into his house, he set meat before them, and rejoiced, believing in God with all his house.*
  10. *[1 Thessalonians 1:5-6]- For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake. And ye became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Ghost.*
  11. *[2 Timothy 3:7]- Ever learning, and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.*
  12. *[1 Timothy 6:3]- If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to wholesome words, even the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the doctrine which is according to godliness;*
  13. *[John 7:17]- If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself.*
  14. *[Luke 16:31]- And he said unto him, If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded, though one rose from the dead.*
  15. *[James 1:22]- But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.*
  16. *[Psalm 27: 13-14]- I had fainted, unless I had believed to see the goodness of the LORD in the land of the living. Wait on the LORD: be of good courage, and he shall strengthen thine heart: wait, I say, on the LORD.*
  17. *[Lamentations 3:26]- It is good that a man should both hope and quietly wait for the salvation of the LORD.*
  18. *[Jeremiah 31:34]- And they shall teach no more every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the LORD: for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith the LORD: for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.*



19. *[Romans 15:13]-Now the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that ye may abound in hope, through the power of the Holy Ghost.*
20. *[Isaiah 50:10-11]- Who is among you that feareth the LORD, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? let him trust in the name of the LORD, and stay upon his God. Behold, all ye that kindle a fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks: walk in the light of your fire, and in the sparks that ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand; ye shall lie down in sorrow.*

**D.** We should continue and increase in the most holy faith.

1. *[Colossians 1:23]- If ye continue in the faith grounded and settled, and be not moved away from the hope of the gospel, which ye have heard, and which was preached to every creature which is under heaven; whereof I Paul am made a minister;*
2. *[Hebrews 3:6,14]- But Christ as a son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end. For we are made partakers of Christ, if we hold the beginning of our confidence stedfast unto the end;*
3. *[Jude 20]- But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,*
4. *[Colossians 2:7]- Rooted and built up in him, and stablished in the faith, as ye have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving.*
5. *[1 Corinthians 3:1]- And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, even as unto babes in Christ.*
6. *[Philippians 3:12-13]- Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus. Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but this one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before,*
7. *[Ephesians 4:13]- Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ:*
8. *[1 Peter 2:2]- As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby:*
9. *[1 Peter 1:5]- Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.*
10. *[1 Timothy 6:12]- Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, whereunto thou art also called, and hast professed a good profession before many witnesses.*
11. *[Matthew 14: 29-31]- And he said, Come. And when Peter was come down out of the ship, he walked on the water, to go to Jesus. But when he saw the wind boisterous, he was afraid; and beginning to sink, he cried, saying, Lord, save me. And immediately Jesus stretched forth his hand, and caught him, and said unto him, O thou of little faith, wherefore didst thou doubt?*
12. *[Exodus 17:11]- And it came to pass, when Moses held up his hand, that Israel prevailed: and when he let down his hand, Amalek prevailed.*
13. *[Hebrews 12:2]- Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.*
14. *[Mark 9:24]- And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief.*
15. *[1 John 2:1-2]- My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous: And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.*
16. *[Luke 22: 31-32]- And the Lord said, Simon, Simon, behold, Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat:*

17. *[Job 13:15]- Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him: but I will maintain mine own ways before him.*
18. *[Philippians 1:6]- Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ:*

XII. Make diligent use of your most holy faith for the immediate performance of the duties of the law, by walking no longer according to your old natural state, or any principles or means of practice that belong unto it; but only according to that new state which you receive by faith, and the principles and means of practice that properly belong thereunto; and strive to continue and increase in such manner of practice. This is the only way to attain to an acceptable performance of those holy and righteous duties, as far as it is possible in this present life.

A. Proof texts.

1. *[Esther 1:7]- And they gave them drink in vessels of gold, (the vessels being diverse one from another,) and royal wine in abundance, according to the state of the king.*
2. *[Proverbs 18:23]- The poor useth intreaties; but the rich answereth roughly.*
3. *[1 Corinthians 13:11]- When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things.*
4. *[1 Timothy 3:16]- And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.*
5. *[John 14:5]- Thomas saith unto him, Lord, we know not whither thou goest; and how can we know the way?*

B. Several peculiar words and phrases, whereby this mysterious manner of practice is expressed in the Holy Scriptures and commended to you as the only way for the sure attainment of all holiness in heart and life.

1. This is the manner of practice in Scripture, which is expressed by ‘living by faith’; ‘walking by faith’; ‘faith working by love’; ‘overcoming the world by faith’; ‘quenching all the fiery darts of the wicked, by the shield of faith’.
  - a. *[Habakkuk 2:4]- Behold, his soul which is lifted up is not upright in him: but the just shall live by his faith.*
  - b. *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
  - c. *[Hebrews 10: 38]- Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him.*
  - d. *[2 Corinthians 5:7]- (For we walk by faith, not by sight:)*
  - e. *[Galatians 5:6]- For in Jesus Christ neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision; but faith which worketh by love.*
  - f. *[1 John 5:4]- For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith.*
  - g. *[Ephesians 6:16]- Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked.*
2. The same thing is commended to us by the terms of ‘walking, rooted and built up in Christ’; ‘living to God, and not to ourselves but to have Christ living in us’; ‘good conversation in Christ’; ‘putting on the Lord Jesus Christ, that we may walk honestly, as in the day’; ‘being strong in the Lord, and in the power of His might’; ‘doing all things in the name of Christ’;

‘walking up and down in the name of the Lord’; ‘going in the strength of the Lord; making mention of His righteousness, even of His only’.

- a. *[Colossians 2:6-7]- As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk ye in him: Rooted and built up in him, and stablished in the faith, as ye have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving.*
  - b. *[Galatians 2:19-20]- For I through the law am dead to the law, that I might live unto God. I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
  - c. *[1 Peter 3:16]- Having a good conscience; that, whereas they speak evil of you, as of evildoers, they may be ashamed that falsely accuse your good conversation in Christ.*
  - d. *[Romans 13:13-14]- Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying. But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.*
  - e. *[Ephesians 6:10]- Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might.*
  - f. *[Colossians 3:17]- And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.*
  - g. *[Zechariah 10:12]- And I will strengthen them in the LORD; and they shall walk up and down in his name, saith the LORD.*
  - h. *[Psalm 71:16]- I will go in the strength of the Lord GOD: I will make mention of thy righteousness, even of thine only.*
3. It is also signified by the phrases of ‘being strong in the grace that is in Christ Jesus’; ‘having our conversation in the world, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of God’; ‘having or holding fast grace, that we may serve God acceptably, laboring abundantly,’ in such manner as that the whole work is not performed by us, but ‘by the grace of God that is with us’.
- a. *[2 Timothy 2:1]- Thou therefore, my son, be strong in the grace that is in Christ Jesus.*
  - b. *[2 Corinthians 1:12]- For our rejoicing is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity and godly sincerity, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of God, we have had our conversation in the world, and more abundantly to you-ward.*
  - c. *[1 Corinthians 15:10]- But by the grace of God I am what I am: and his grace which was bestowed upon me was not in vain; but I laboured more abundantly than they all: yet not I, but the grace of God which was with me.*
4. It is also signified when we are to ‘put off the old’ and ‘put on the new man’; yea, to continue in so doing, though we have done it in a measure already; and that we avoid our ‘former sinful conversation’; and to avoid sin, because we have ‘put off the old’, and ‘put on the new man’.
- a. *[Ephesians 4:21-22,24]- If so be that ye have heard him, and have been taught by him, as the truth is in Jesus: That ye put off concerning the former conversation the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts; And that ye put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.*
  - b. *[Colossians 3:9-10]- Lie not one to another, seeing that ye have put off the old man with his deeds; And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him:*
5. We are to understand the same thing when we are taught not ‘to walk after the flesh, but after the Spirit’, that we may be ‘free from the law of sin’, and ‘that the righteousness of the law may be fulfilled in us’; and, ‘through the Spirit, to mortify the deeds of the body’; and ‘to be

led by the Spirit', because we 'live by the Spirit', and have 'crucified the flesh, with the affections and lusts'.

- a. *[Romans 8:1-3]- There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh:*
  - b. *[Galatians 5:24]- And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts.*
6. This is the manner of walking which the apostle Paul directs us to, when he teaches us, by his own example, that the continual work of our lives should be ‘
- a. *[Philippians 3:10-12,14]- That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death; If by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead. Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus. I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.*
- C. *Lay before you some necessary instructions*, that your steps may be guided aright to continue and go forward in this way of holiness, until you be made perfect in Christ.
1. Proof text
    - a. *[Isaiah 35:8]- And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein.*
  2. Though we are partakers of a new holy state by faith in Christ, yet our natural state remains in a measure with all its corrupt principles and properties.
    - a. *[Mark 9:24]- And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief.*
    - b. *[2 Corinthians 13:4]- For though he was crucified through weakness, yet he liveth by the power of God. For we also are weak in him, but we shall live with him by the power of God toward you.*
    - c. *[1 Corinthians 13:10-11]- But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away. When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things.*
    - d. *[Ephesians 4:13]- Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ:*
    - e. *[1 Corinthians 3:1]- And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, even as unto babes in Christ.*
    - f. *[Philippians 3:8,10,14]- Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ, That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death; I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.*
    - g. *[Galatians 5:5]- For we through the Spirit wait for the hope of righteousness by faith.*
    - h. *[Romans 8:23]- And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body.*

- i. *[Colossians 3:10-11]- And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him: Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.*
- j. *[Romans 8:9,13]- But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his. For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall die: but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live.*
- k. Two contrary states.
  - 1.) *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
  - 2.) *[Romans 7:14-15,18,22,25]- For we know that the law is spiritual: but I am carnal, sold under sin. For that which I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not; but what I hate, that do I. For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not. For I delight in the law of God after the inward man: I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.*
  - 3.) *[1 John 1:8]- If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.*
  - 4.) *[2 Corinthians 12:10-11]- Therefore I take pleasure in infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distresses for Christ's sake: for when I am weak, then am I strong. I am become a fool in glorying; ye have compelled me: for I ought to have been commended of you: for in nothing am I behind the very chiefest apostles, though I be nothing.*
  - 5.) *[Philippians 4:13]- I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.*
  - 6.) *[Romans 8:10]- And if Christ be in you, the body is dead because of sin; but the Spirit is life because of righteousness.*
  - 7.) *[John 11:25-26]- Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live: And whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest thou this?*
  - 8.) *[Galatians 4:1-2]- Now I say, That the heir, as long as he is a child, differeth nothing from a servant, though he be lord of all; But is under tutors and governors until the time appointed of the father.*
  - 9.) *[Galatians 3:13]- Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:*
  - 10.) *[Ephesians 1:7]- In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;*
  - 11.) *[Isaiah 54:9]- For this is as the waters of Noah unto me: for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth; so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee, nor rebuke thee.*
  - 12.) *[Daniel 9:11]- Yea, all Israel have transgressed thy law, even by departing, that they might not obey thy voice; therefore the curse is poured upon us, and the oath that is written in the law of Moses the servant of God, because we have sinned against him.*
  - 13.) *[Psalm 51:14]- Deliver me from bloodguiltiness, O God, thou God of my salvation: and my tongue shall sing aloud of thy righteousness.*
  - 14.) *[Matthew 6:12]- And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.*
  - 15.) *[Amos 3:2]- You only have I known of all the families of the earth: therefore I will punish you for all your iniquities.*

- 16.) *[Ephesians 1:3]- Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ:*
- 17.) *[Ephesians 2:6]- And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:*
- 18.) *[Matthew 13:33]- Another parable spake he unto them; The kingdom of heaven is like unto leaven, which a woman took, and hid in three measures of meal, till the whole was leavened.*
- 19.) *[Proverbs 4:18]- But the path of the just is as the shining light, that shineth more and more unto the perfect day.*

3. Despair of purging the flesh, or natural man of its sinful lusts and inclinations, and of practicing holiness by your willing and resolving to do the best that lies in your own power, and trusting on the grace of God and Christ to help you in such resolutions and endeavors: rather resolve to trust on Christ, ‘to work in you to will and do, by His own power, according to His own good pleasure’.
- a. *[Galatians 5:17]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*
- b. *[Romans 8:7]- Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.*
- c. They that would cure it and make it holy by their own resolutions and endeavors do act quite contrary to the design of Christ’s death, *for He died, not that the flesh, or old natural man, might be made holy, but that it might be crucified, and destroyed out of us, and that we might live to God, not to ourselves*, or by any natural power of our own resolutions and endeavors, but by Christ living in us, and by His Spirit bringing forth the fruits of righteousness in us.
- 1.) *[Romans 6:6]- Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.*
- 2.) *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
- 3.) *[Galatians 5:24-25]- And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts. If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.*
- 4.) Our way to mortify sinful affections and lusts must be, *not by purging them out of the flesh, but by putting off the flesh itself and getting above into Christ by faith*, and walking in that new nature that is by Him.
- 5.) *[Proverbs 15:24]- The way of life is above to the wise, that he may depart from hell beneath.*
- 6.) *[Romans 7:18]- For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not.*
- 7.) *[Acts 17:28]- For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.*
- 8.) *[Luke 18:11]- The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, God, I thank thee, that I am not as other men are, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican.*
4. You must not seek to procure forgiveness of sins, the favor of God, a new holy nature, life and happiness, by any works of the moral law, or by any rites and ceremonies whatever; but rather you must work as those that have all these things already, according to your new state in Christ; as such who are only to receive them more and more by faith, as they are ready

prepared and treasured up for you, and freely given to you, in your spiritual Head, the Lord Jesus Christ.

- a. *[Romans 7:4]- Wherefore, my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another, even to him who is raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto God.*
  - b. *[Galatians 5:18]- But if ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law.*
  - c. *[Galatians 3:3]- Are ye so foolish? having begun in the Spirit, are ye now made perfect by the flesh?*
  - d. *[Galatians 5:4]- Christ is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; ye are fallen from grace.*
  - e. *[Colossians 2:19-20]- And not holding the Head, from which all the body by joints and bands having nourishment ministered, and knit together, increaseth with the increase of God.*
  - f. *[Colossians 3:1]- If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God.*
5. Think not that you can effectually incline your heart to the immediate practice of holiness by any such practical principles as do only serve to bind, press and urge you to the performance of holy duties; but rather let such principles stir you up to go to Christ first by faith, that you may be effectually inclined to the immediate practice of holiness in Him by gospel principles that strengthen and enable you, as well as oblige you thereunto.
- a. *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
  - b. *[Romans 7:5,8]- For when we were in the flesh, the motions of sins, which were by the law, did work in our members to bring forth fruit unto death. For when we were in the flesh, the motions of sins, which were by the law, did work in our members to bring forth fruit unto death.*
  - c. *[1 Timothy 1:8]- But we know that the law is good, if a man use it lawfully;*
6. Stir up and strengthen yourself to perform the duties of holiness by a firm persuasion of your enjoyment of Jesus Christ, and all spiritual and everlasting benefits through Him. Set not yourselves on the performance of the law with any prevailing thoughts or apprehensions that you are yet without an interest in Christ, and the love of God through Him; and the curse of the law, the power of sin and Satan, having no better portion than this present world; no better strength, than that which is in the purposes and resolutions of your own free will.
- a. *[Genesis 3:10]- And he said, I heard thy voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked; and I hid myself.*
  - b. *[Romans 6:6,11]- Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord.*
  - c. *[Ephesians 6:20]- For which I am an ambassador in bonds: that therein I may speak boldly, as I ought to speak.*
  - d. *[Psalm 16:8]- I have set the LORD always before me: because he is at my right hand, I shall not be moved.*
7. Consider what endowments, privileges or properties of your new state are most meet and forcible to incline and strengthen your heart to love God above all, and to renounce all sin, and to give up yourself to universal obedience to His commands; and strive to walk in the persuasion of them, that you may attain to the practice of these great duties.

- a. *[1 John 4:18-19]- There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love. We love him, because he first loved us.*
  - b. *[Psalm 18:1-2]- I will love thee, O LORD, my strength. The LORD is my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; my God, my strength, in whom I will trust; my buckler, and the horn of my salvation, and my high tower.*
  - c. *[1 Timothy 1:5]- Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned:*
  - d. *[Hebrews 9:14]- How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?*
  - e. *[1 John 1:3]- That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.*
  - f. *[2 Corinthians 6:16]- And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people.*
  - g. *[Galatians 5:25]- If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.*
  - h. *[1 Thessalonians 5:23]- And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.*
  - i. *[Ephesians 2:10]- For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.*
  - j. *[Romans 6:6,22]- Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, ye have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life.*
  - k. *[Colossians 3:3-4]- For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God. When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory.*
  - l. *[2 Corinthians 3:6,8]- Who also hath made us able ministers of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit: for the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life. How shall not the ministration of the spirit be rather glorious?*
  - m. *[Romans 1:16]- For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.*
8. For the performance of other duties of the law, you are to consider not only these endowments, privileges and properties of your new state, which are meet and forcible to enable you to the love of God and universal obedience, but also those that have a peculiar force and aptitude suitable to the special nature of such duties, and you must endeavor to assure yourselves of them by faith, that you may be encouraged and strengthened to perform the duties.
  9. If you endeavor to grow in grace and in all holiness, trust assuredly that God will enable you by this manner of walking to do everything that is necessary for His glory, and your own everlasting salvation; and that He will graciously accept of that obedience through Christ, which you are enabled to perform, according to the measure of your faith, and pardon your failings, though you offend in many things and fall short of many others, as to degrees of holiness and high acts of obedience.
    - a. *[Galatians 5:16-17]- This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh. For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*



- b. *[Matthew 19:8]- He saith unto them, Moses because of the hardness of your hearts suffered you to put away your wives: but from the beginning it was not so.*
- c. *[Deuteronomy 20:3,8]- And shall say unto them, Hear, O Israel, ye approach this day unto battle against your enemies: let not your hearts faint, fear not, and do not tremble, neither be ye terrified because of them; And the officers shall speak further unto the people, and they shall say, What man is there that is fearful and fainthearted? let him go and return unto his house, lest his brethren's heart faint as well as his heart.*
- d. *[John 18:8]- Jesus answered, I have told you that I am he: if therefore ye seek me, let these go their way:*
- e. *[Isaiah 40:11]- He shall feed his flock like a shepherd: he shall gather the lambs with his arm, and carry them in his bosom, and shall gently lead those that are with young.*
- f. *[Matthew 9:14-17]- Then came to him the disciples of John, saying, Why do we and the Pharisees fast oft, but thy disciples fast not? And Jesus said unto them, Can the children of the bridechamber mourn, as long as the bridegroom is with them? but the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken from them, and then shall they fast. No man putteth a piece of new cloth unto an old garment, for that which is put in to fill it up taketh from the garment, and the rent is made worse. Neither do men put new wine into old bottles: else the bottles break, and the wine runneth out, and the bottles perish: but they put new wine into new bottles, and both are preserved.*
- g. *[Ecclesiastes 7:16]- Be not righteous over much; neither make thyself over wise: why shouldst thou destroy thyself ?*
- h. *[Romans 12:3]- For I say, through the grace given unto me, to every man that is among you, not to think of himself more highly than he ought to think; but to think soberly, according as God hath dealt to every man the measure of faith.*

XIII. *Endeavor diligently to make the right use of all means appointed in the Word of God for the obtaining and practicing holiness only in this way of believing in Christ and walking in Him, according to your new state by faith.*

- A. Though all holiness be effectually attained by the life of faith in Christ, yet the use of any means appointed in the Word for attaining and promoting holiness is not hereby made void, but rather established.
  - I. True believers find by experience that their faith needs such helps, and they that think themselves above any need of them do reject the counsel of God against themselves, like to those proud Pharisees and lawyers that thought it a thing beneath them and refused to be baptized by John.
    - a. *[Luke 7:30]- But the Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of God against themselves, being not baptized of him.*
    - b. *[Matthew 15:7-9]- Ye hypocrites, well did Esaias prophesy of you, saying, This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with their lips; but their heart is far from me. But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.*
- B. *The right manner of using all the means of holiness for the obtaining and practicing it no other way, besides that of believing in Christ and walking in Him, according to our new state by faith, which has been already demonstrated to be the only way in which we may effectually attain to this great end.*
  - I. *Proof text.*
    - a. *[2 Timothy 3:15]- And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.*

2. *The right use of the means of grace* is a point wherein many are ignorant, that use them with great zeal and diligence; and thereby they do not only lose their labor, and the benefit of the means, but also they wrest and pervert them to their own destruction.
  - a. *[Romans 9:31-32]- But Israel, which followed after the law of righteousness, hath not attained to the law of righteousness. Wherefore? Because they sought it not by faith, but as it were by the works of the law. For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;*
  - b. *[Romans 10:4-5]- For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth. For Moses describeth the righteousness which is of the law, That the man which doeth those things shall live by them.*
  - c. *[2 Corinthians 3:13-14]- And not as Moses, which put a veil over his face, that the children of Israel could not stedfastly look to the end of that which is abolished: But their minds were blinded: for until this day remaineth the same vail untaken away in the reading of the old testament; which vail is done away in Christ.*
  
3. The principal means of holiness appointed in the Word of God are to be made use of in that right manner expressed in the direction.
  - a. We must endeavor diligently to know the Word of God contained in the Holy Scripture, and to improve it to this end that we may be made wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.
    - 1.) *[2 Timothy 3:15]- And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.*
    - 2.) *[Joshua 2:9,11]- And she said unto the men, I know that the LORD hath given you the land, and that your terror is fallen upon us, and that all the inhabitants of the land faint because of you. And as soon as we had heard these things, our hearts did melt, neither did there remain any more courage in any man, because of you: for the LORD your God, he is God in heaven above, and in earth beneath.*
    - 3.) *[Colossians 2:2-3]- That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ; In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.*
    - 4.) *[John 17:3]- And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.*
    - 5.) *[2 Corinthians 4:3]- But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost:*
    - 6.) *[Romans 10:4]- For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.*
    - 7.) *[Matthew 12:34]- O generation of vipers, how can ye, being evil, speak good things? for out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaketh.*
    - 8.) *[Romans 5:14]- Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.*
    - 9.) *[Philippians 3:15]- Let us therefore, as many as be perfect, be thus minded: and if in any thing ye be otherwise minded, God shall reveal even this unto you.*
    - 10.) *[Romans 2:20]- An instructor of the foolish, a teacher of babes, which hast the form of knowledge and of the truth in the law.*
    - 11.) *[Luke 12:47]- And that servant, which knew his lord's will, and prepared not himself, neither did according to his will, shall be beaten with many stripes.*
    - 12.) *[Matthew 13:14-15]- And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive: For this people's heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their*

*eyes and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.*

- b. Examination of our state and ways according to the Word, whether we be at present in a state of sin and wrath, or of grace and salvation; that, if we be in a state of sin, we may know our sickness and come to the great Physician while it is called today; and, if we be in a state of grace, we may know that we are of the truth, and assure our hearts before God with greater confidence, by the testimony of a good conscience; that so our hearts may be more strongly comforted by faith and established in every good work; and that, if our ways be evil, we may turn from them to the Lord our God through Christ; without whom none come to the Father.
- 1.) *[1 John 3:19,21]- And hereby we know that we are of the truth, and shall assure our hearts before him. Beloved, if our heart condemn us not, then have we confidence toward God.*
  - 2.) *[Lamentations 3:40]- Let us search and try our ways, and turn again to the LORD.*
  - 3.) *[John 14:6]- Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.*
  - 4.) *[Titus 1:15]- Unto the pure all things are pure: but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving is nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled.*
  - 5.) *[Jeremiah 17:9]- The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it?*
  - 6.) *[Romans 4:5]- But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.*
  - 7.) *[Philippians 1:11]- Being filled with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ, unto the glory and praise of God.*
  - 8.) *[Galatians 5:17]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*
  - 9.) *[1 Corinthians 3:1]- And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, even as unto babes in Christ.*
  - 10.) *[2 Corinthians 13:5]- Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates?*
  - 11.) *[Luke 1:15]- For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb.*
  - 12.) *[2 Timothy 3:15]- And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.*
  - 13.) *[James 2:18]- Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works.*
  - 14.) *[2 Corinthians 3:6]- Who also hath made us able ministers of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit: for the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life.*
  - 15.) *[1 John 3:14]- We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his brother abideth in death.*
  - 16.) *[Hebrews 13:18]- Pray for us: for we trust we have a good conscience, in all things willing to live honestly.*
- c. Meditation on the Word of God is of very great use and advantage for the attainment and practice of holiness through faith in Christ.

- 1.) *[Psalm 63:5-6]- My soul shall be satisfied as with marrow and fatness; and my mouth shall praise thee with joyful lips: When I remember thee upon my bed, and meditate on thee in the night watches.*
  - 2.) *[Romans 7:25]- I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.*
  - 3.) *[Psalm 119:97]- O how love I thy law! it is my meditation all the day.*
  - 4.) *[Psalm 1:2]- But his delight is in the law of the LORD; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.*
  - 5.) *[1 Peter 2:2]- As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby:*
  - 6.) *[2 Peter 1:12]- Wherefore I will not be negligent to put you always in remembrance of these things, though ye know them, and be established in the present truth.*
  - 7.) *[Romans 1:16]- For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.*
  - 8.) *[2 Corinthians 3:6]- Who also hath made us able ministers of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit: for the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life.*
  - 9.) *[Acts 20:32]- And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified.*
  - 10.) *[Hebrews 4:2]- For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.*
  - 11.) *[Psalm 26:3]- For thy lovingkindness is before mine eyes: and I have walked in thy truth.*
  - 12.) *[2 Corinthians 3:18]- But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.*
- d. The sacrament of baptism must needs be of great use to promote the life of faith, if it be made use of according to its nature and institution, because it is a seal of the righteousness of faith, as circumcision was formerly.
- 1.) *[Romans 4:11]- And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all them that believe, though they be not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed unto them also:*
  - 2.) *[Galatians 5:2,4]- Behold, I Paul say unto you, that if ye be circumcised, Christ shall profit you nothing. Christ is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; ye are fallen from grace.*
  - 3.) *[Philippians 3:4-5]- Though I might also have confidence in the flesh. If any other man thinketh that he hath whereof he might trust in the flesh, I more: Circumcised the eighth day, of the stock of Israel, of the tribe of Benjamin, an Hebrew of the Hebrews; as touching the law, a Pharisee;*
  - 4.) *[1 Corinthians 10:2,5]- And were all baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea; But with many of them God was not well pleased: for they were overthrown in the wilderness.*
  - 5.) *[Jeremiah 9:25]- Behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that I will punish all them which are circumcised with the uncircumcised;*
  - 6.) *[Joshua 5:6-7]- For the children of Israel walked forty years in the wilderness, till all the people that were men of war, which came out of Egypt, were consumed, because they obeyed not the voice of the LORD: unto whom the LORD swore that he*

would not shew them the land, which the LORD sware unto their fathers that he would give us, a land that floweth with milk and honey. And their children, whom he raised up in their stead, them Joshua circumcised: for they were uncircumcised, because they had not circumcised them by the way.

- 7.) *[Acts 19:3]- And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John's baptism.*
  - 8.) *[Galatians 3:25-27]- But after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster. For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus. For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.*
  - 9.) *[Colossians 2:12-13]- Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead. And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses;*
  - 10.) *[1 Corinthians 12:12-13]- For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also is Christ. For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.*
- e. The sacrament of the Lord's Supper is as a spiritual feast to nourish our faith, and to strengthen us to walk in all holiness by Christ living and working in us, if it be used according to the pattern which Christ gave us in its first institution recorded by three evangelists, and was extraordinarily revealed from heaven by Christ Himself to the apostle Paul, that we might be the more obliged and stirred up to the exact observation of it.
- 1.) *[Matthew 26:26-28]- And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and brake it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body. And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it; For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.*
  - 2.) *[Mark 14:22-24]- And as they did eat, Jesus took bread, and blessed, and brake it, and gave to them, and said, Take, eat: this is my body. And he took the cup, and when he had given thanks, he gave it to them: and they all drank of it. And he said unto them, This is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many.*
  - 3.) *[Luke 22:19-20]- And he took bread, and gave thanks, and brake it, and gave unto them, saying, This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me. Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you.*
  - 4.) *[1 Corinthians 11:23-25]- For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, that the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread: And when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me. After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, this cup is the new testament in my blood: this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in remembrance of me.*
  - 5.) *[Hebrews 8:10-12]- For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people: And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest. For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more.*
  - 6.) *[John 6.51]- I am the living bread which came down from heaven: if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.*

- 7.) *[1 Corinthians 10:16]- The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ?*
  - 8.) *[1 Corinthians 11:23]- For I have received of the Lord that which also I delivered unto you, that the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread:*
  - 9.) *[Acts 2:42]- And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.*
  - 10.) *[Acts 20:7]- And upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow; and continued his speech until midnight.*
  - 11.) *[1 Corinthians 11:29]- For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body.*
  - 12.) *[Exodus 28:38]- And it shall be upon Aaron's forehead, that Aaron may bear the iniquity of the holy things, which the children of Israel shall hallow in all their holy gifts; and it shall be always upon his forehead, that they may be accepted before the LORD.*
  - 13.) *[Deuteronomy 16:14-15]- And thou shalt rejoice in thy feast, thou, and thy son, and thy daughter, and thy manservant, and thy maidservant, and the Levite, the stranger, and the fatherless, and the widow, that are within thy gates. Seven days shalt thou keep a solemn feast unto the LORD thy God in the place which the LORD shall choose: because the LORD thy God shall bless thee in all thine increase, and in all the works of thine hands, therefore thou shalt surely rejoice.*
- f. Prayer is to be made use of as a means of living by faith in Christ, according to the new man.
- 1.) *[1 Thessalonians 5:17]- Pray without ceasing.*
  - 2.) *[Romans 12:12]- Rejoicing in hope; patient in tribulation; continuing instant in prayer;*
  - 3.) *[1 Peter 2:5]- Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.*
  - 4.) *[Psalm 141:2]- Let my prayer be set forth before thee as incense; and the lifting up of my hands as the evening sacrifice.*
  - 5.) *[1 Corinthians 1:2]- Unto the church of God which is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints, with all that in every place call upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both their's and our's:*
  - 6.) *[Psalm 65:2]- O thou that hearest prayer, unto thee shall all flesh come.*
  - 7.) *[Ezekiel 36:37]- Thus saith the Lord GOD; I will yet for this be enquired of by the house of Israel, to do it for them; I will increase them with men like a flock.*
  - 8.) *[Philippians 1:19-20]- For I know that this shall turn to my salvation through your prayer, and the supply of the Spirit of Jesus Christ, According to my earnest expectation and my hope, that in nothing I shall be ashamed, but that with all boldness, as always, so now also Christ shall be magnified in my body, whether it be by life, or by death.*
  - 9.) *[Psalm 66:16,18-19]- Come and hear, all ye that fear God, and I will declare what he hath done for my soul.*
  - 10.) *[Psalm 50:15]- And call upon me in the day of trouble: I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me.*
  - 11.) *[2 Corinthians 1:10-11]- Who delivered us from so great a death, and doth deliver: in whom we trust that he will yet deliver us; Ye also helping together by prayer for*

*us, that for the gift bestowed upon us by the means of many persons thanks may be given by many on our behalf.*

- 12.) *[2 Samuel 7:27]- For thou, O LORD of hosts, God of Israel, hast revealed to thy servant, saying, I will build thee an house: therefore hath thy servant found in his heart to pray this prayer unto thee.*
- 13.) *[Hebrews 4:15-16]- For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin.*
- 14.) *[Zechariah 12:10]- And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.*
- 15.) *[Galatians 4:6]- And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.*
- 16.) *[Acts 9:11]- And the Lord said unto him, Arise, and go into the street which is called Straight, and enquire in the house of Judas for one called Saul, of Tarsus: for, behold, he prayeth,*
- 17.) *[Jeremiah 10:25]- Pour out thy fury upon the heathen that know thee not, and upon the families that call not on thy name: for they have eaten up Jacob, and devoured him, and consumed him, and have made his habitation desolate.*
- 18.) *[Isaiah 56:7]- Even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices shall be accepted upon mine altar; for mine house shall be called an house of prayer for all people.*
- 19.) *[Psalm 62:8]- Trust in him at all times; ye people, pour out your heart before him: God is a refuge for us. Selah.*
- 20.) *[Mark 14:3]- And being in Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he sat at meat, there came a woman having an alabaster box of ointment of spikenard very precious; and she brake the box, and poured it on his head.*
- 21.) *[John 12:3]- And being in Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he sat at meat, there came a woman having an alabaster box of ointment of spikenard very precious; and she brake the box, and poured it on his head.*
- 22.) *[Romans 10:11-13]- For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed. For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him. For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.*
- 23.) *[Psalm 141:2]- Let my prayer be set forth before thee as incense; and the lifting up of my hands as the evening sacrifice.*
- 24.) *[Psalm 138:3]- In the day when I cried thou answeredst me, and strengthenedst me with strength in my soul.*
- 25.) *[Luke 11:13]- If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?*
- 26.) *[Hebrews 4:16]- Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.*
- 27.) *[Psalm 81:10]- I am the LORD thy God, which brought thee out of the land of Egypt: open thy mouth wide, and I will fill it.*
- 28.) *[Exodus 17:11]- And it came to pass, when Moses held up his hand, that Israel prevailed: and when he let down his hand, Amalek prevailed.*

- 29.) *[1 Samuel 1:15,18]- And Hannah answered and said, No, my lord, I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit: I have drunk neither wine nor strong drink, but have poured out my soul before the LORD.*
- 30.) *[Philippians 4:6-7]- Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.*
- 31.) *[1 Samuel 1:18]- And she said, Let thine handmaid find grace in thy sight. So the woman went her way, and did eat, and her countenance was no more sad.*
- 32.) *[Psalm 32:1-5]- Blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered. Blessed is the man unto whom the LORD imputeth not iniquity, and in whose spirit there is no guile. When I kept silence, my bones waxed old through my roaring all the day long. For day and night thy hand was heavy upon me: my moisture is turned into the drought of summer. Selah. I acknowledge my sin unto thee, and mine iniquity have I not hid. I said, I will confess my transgressions unto the LORD; and thou forgavest the iniquity of my sin. Selah.*
- 33.) *[Exodus 30:7-8]- And Aaron shall burn thereon sweet incense every morning: when he dresseth the lamps, he shall burn incense upon it. And when Aaron lighteth the lamps at even, he shall burn incense upon it, a perpetual incense before the LORD throughout your generations.*
- 34.) *[Ephesians 6:18]- Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;*
- 35.) *[Luke 9:29]- And as he prayed, the fashion of his countenance was altered, and his raiment was white and glistening.*
- 36.) *[Exodus 34:29]- And it came to pass, when Moses came down from mount Sinai with the two tables of testimony in Moses' hand, when he came down from the mount, that Moses wist not that the skin of his face shone while he talked with him.*
- 37.) *[Ephesians 6:18]- Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;*
- 38.) *[Acts 2:42]- And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.*
- 39.) *[Acts 10:30-31]- And Cornelius said, Four days ago I was fasting until this hour; and at the ninth hour I prayed in my house, and, behold, a man stood before me in bright clothing, And said, Cornelius, thy prayer is heard, and thine alms are had in remembrance in the sight of God.*
- 40.) *[Matthew 6:11]- Give us this day our daily bread.*
- 41.) *[Daniel 6:10]- Now when Daniel knew that the writing was signed, he went into his house; and his windows being open in his chamber toward Jerusalem, he kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God, as he did aforetime.*
- 42.) *[Psalm 92:2]- To shew forth thy lovingkindness in the morning, and thy faithfulness every night,*
- 43.) *[Psalm 55:17]- Evening, and morning, and at noon, will I pray, and cry aloud: and he shall hear my voice.*
- 44.) *[James 5:13-14]- Is any among you afflicted? let him pray. Is any merry? let him sing psalms. Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord:*
- 45.) *[Psalm 129:8]- Neither do they which go by say, The blessing of the LORD be upon you: we bless you in the name of the LORD.*



- 46.)[2 Samuel 15:31]- *And one told David, saying, Ahithophel is among the conspirators with Absalom. And David said, O LORD, I pray thee, turn the counsel of Ahithophel into foolishness.*
- 47.)[Nehemiah 2:4]- *Then the king said unto me, For what dost thou make request? So I prayed to the God of heaven.*
- 48.)[Matthew 6:6]- *But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father which is in secret; and thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly.*
- 49.)[Acts 10:30-31]- *And Cornelius said, Four days ago I was fasting until this hour; and at the ninth hour I prayed in my house, and, behold, a man stood before me in bright clothing, And said, Cornelius, thy prayer is heard, and thine alms are had in remembrance in the sight of God.*
- 50.)[Psalm 109:4]- *For my love they are my adversaries: but I give myself unto prayer.*
- 51.)[Psalm 119:164]- *Seven times a day do I praise thee because of thy righteous judgments.*
- 52.)[Luke 11:1]- *And it came to pass, that, as he was praying in a certain place, when he ceased, one of his disciples said unto him, Lord, teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples.*
- 53.)[2 Timothy 3:16-17]- *All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.*
- 54.)[Jude 20]- *But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,*
- 55.)[Ephesians 2:18]- *For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.*
- 56.) You must pray with your hearts and spirits; where the Spirit of Christ, and of prayer, principally resides; with understanding; for we are renewed in knowledge; so that praying in ignorance cannot sanctify.
- a.) [Isaiah 26: 9]- *With my soul have I desired thee in the night; yea, with my spirit within me will I seek thee early: for when thy judgments are in the earth, the inhabitants of the world will learn righteousness.*
  - b.) [John 4:24]- *God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.*
  - c.) [Galatians 4:6]- *And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.*
  - d.) [Ephesians 1:17]- *That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him:*
  - e.) [1 Corinthians 14:15-16]- *What is it then? I will pray with the spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also: I will sing with the spirit, and I will sing with the understanding also. Else when thou shalt bless with the spirit, how shall he that occupieth the room of the unlearned say Amen at thy giving of thanks, seeing he understandeth not what thou sayest?*
  - f.) [Colossians 3:10]- *And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him:*
  - g.) [2 Peter 1:3]- *According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue:*
  - h.) [Psalm 62:8]- *Trust in him at all times; ye people, pour out your heart before him: God is a refuge for us. Selah.*

- i.) *[Psalm 27:8]- When thou saidst, Seek ye my face; my heart said unto thee, Thy face, LORD, will I seek.*
  - j.) *[1 Samuel 1:13]- Now Hannah, she spake in her heart; only her lips moved, but her voice was not heard: therefore Eli thought she had been drunken.*
  - k.) *[Psalm 78:36]- Nevertheless they did flatter him with their mouth, and they lied unto him with their tongues.*
  - l.) *[2 Chronicles 20:12]- O our God, wilt thou not judge them? for we have no might against this great company that cometh against us; neither know we what to do: but our eyes are upon thee.*
  - m.) *[Daniel 9:3]- And I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes:*
  - n.) *[1 Peter 4:7]- But the end of all things is at hand: be ye therefore sober, and watch unto prayer.*
  - o.) *[Ezekiel 33:31]- And they come unto thee as the people cometh, and they sit before thee as my people, and they hear thy words, but they will not do them: for with their mouth they shew much love, but their heart goeth after their covetousness.*
  - p.) *[Malachi 1:13-14]- Ye said also, Behold, what a weariness is it! and ye have snuffed at it, saith the LORD of hosts; and ye brought that which was torn, and the lame, and the sick; thus ye brought an offering: should I accept this of your hand? saith the LORD. But cursed be the deceiver, which hath in his flock a male, and voweth, and sacrificeth unto the LORD a corrupt thing: for I am a great King, saith the LORD of hosts, and my name is dreadful among the heathen.*
  - q.) *[2 Timothy 3:5]- Having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof: from such turn away.*
  - r.) *[Ecclesiastes 5:1,4]- Keep thy foot when thou goest to the house of God, and be more ready to hear, than to give the sacrifice of fools: for they consider not that they do evil. When thou vowest a vow unto God, defer not to pay it; for he hath no pleasure in fools: pay that which thou hast vowed.*
- 57.) You must pray in the name of Christ for the Spirit glorifies Christ; and leads us to God through Christ.
- a.) *[John 16:14]- He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall shew it unto you.*
  - b.) *[Ephesians 2:18]- For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.*
  - c.) *[John 14:13-14]- And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do it.*
  - d.) *[Ephesians 5:20]- Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ;*
  - e.) *[Luke 18:11-12]- The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, God, I thank thee, that I am not as other men are, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican. I fast twice in the week, I give tithes of all that I possess.*
  - f.) *[Romans 7:6]- But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.*

- g.) *[2 Corinthians 3:3]- Forasmuch as ye are manifestly declared to be the epistle of Christ ministered by us, written not with ink, but with the Spirit of the living God; not in tables of stone, but in fleshy tables of the heart.*
  - h.) *[Psalm 51:17]- The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit: a broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise.*
  - i.) *[Daniel 9:18]- O my God, incline thine ear, and hear; open thine eyes, and behold our desolations, and the city which is called by thy name: for we do not present our supplications before thee for our righteousnesses, but for thy great mercies.*
- 58.) You must not think to be accepted for the goodness of your prayers, and trust on them as works of righteousness, which is making idols of your prayers and putting them into the place of Christ - quite contrary to praying in the name of Christ.
- a.) *[John 4:21,24]- Jesus saith unto her, Woman, believe me, the hour cometh, when ye shall neither in this mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, worship the Father. God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.*
  - b.) *[1 Timothy 2:8]- I will therefore that men pray every where, lifting up holy hands, without wrath and doubting.*
  - c.) *[Matthew 6:7]- But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen do: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.*
- 59.) Pray to God as your Father, through Christ as your Saviour, in faith of remission of sins and your acceptance with God and the obtaining of all other things which you desire of Him, as far as is necessary for your salvation.
- a.) *[James 1:5-7]- If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him. But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord.*
  - b.) *[James 5:15]- And the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him.*
  - c.) *[1 John 5:14-15]- And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us: And if we know that he hear us, whatsoever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of him.*
  - d.) *[Mark 9:24]- And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief.*
  - e.) *[Hebrews 10:14]- For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.*
  - f.) *[Psalm 62:8]- Trust in him at all times; ye people, pour out your heart before him: God is a refuge for us. Selah.*
  - g.) *[Psalm 86:7]- In the day of my trouble I will call upon thee: for thou wilt answer me.*
  - h.) *[Psalm 55:16]- As for me, I will call upon God; and the LORD shall save me.*
  - i.) *[Psalm 57:1]- Be merciful unto me, O God, be merciful unto me: for my soul trusteth in thee: yea, in the shadow of thy wings will I make my refuge, until these calamities be overpast.*
  - j.) *[Psalm 17:6]- I have called upon thee, for thou wilt hear me, O God: incline thine ear unto me, and hear my speech.*

- k.) *[Ephesians 3:12]- In whom we have boldness and access with confidence by the faith of him.*
  - l.) *[Romans 8:15]- For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.*
  - m.) *[Galatians 4:6]- And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.*
  - n.) *[Romans 10:14]- How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher?*
  - o.) *[Psalm 77:1-2]- I cried unto God with my voice, even unto God with my voice; and he gave ear unto me. In the day of my trouble I sought the Lord: my sore ran in the night, and ceased not: my soul refused to be comforted.*
  - p.) *[Psalm 32:1,5]- Blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered. I acknowledge my sin unto thee, and mine iniquity have I not hid. I said, I will confess my transgressions unto the LORD; and thou forgavest the iniquity of my sin. Selah.*
  - q.) *[Psalm 51:14-15]- Deliver me from bloodguiltiness, O God, thou God of my salvation: and my tongue shall sing aloud of thy righteousness. O Lord, open thou my lips; and my mouth shall shew forth thy praise.*
  - r.) *[1 Timothy 2:8]- I will therefore that men pray every where, lifting up holy hands, without wrath and doubting.*
- 60.) You must strive in prayer to stir up and act every other sanctifying grace, through faith moving you to this.
- a.) *[Psalm 38:18]- For I will declare mine iniquity; I will be sorry for my sin.*
  - b.) *[Isaiah 27:5]- Or let him take hold of my strength, that he may make peace with me; and he shall make peace with me.*
  - c.) *[Psalm 105:3]- Glory ye in his holy name: let the heart of them rejoice that seek the LORD.*
  - d.) *[Psalm 71:5]- For thou art my hope, O Lord GOD: thou art my trust from my youth.*
  - e.) *[Psalm 4:6]- There be many that say, Who will shew us any good? LORD, lift thou up the light of thy countenance upon us.*
  - f.) *[Psalm 119:4-5]- Thou hast commanded us to keep thy precepts diligently. O that my ways were directed to keep thy statutes!*
  - g.) *[Psalm 122:8]- For my brethren and companions' sakes, I will now say, Peace be within thee.*
  - h.) *[Luke 11:13]- If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?*
  - i.) *[Psalm 37:5]- Commit thy way unto the LORD; trust also in him; and he shall bring it to pass.*
  - j.) *[Matthew 6:33]- But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.*
  - k.) *[Mark 9:24]- And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief.*
  - l.) *[2 Chronicles 1:11-12]- And God said to Solomon, Because this was in thine heart, and thou hast not asked riches, wealth, or honour, nor the life of thine enemies, neither yet hast asked long life; but hast asked wisdom and knowledge*

*for thyself, that thou mayest judge my people, over whom I have made thee king: Wisdom and knowledge is granted unto thee; and I will give thee riches, and wealth, and honour, such as none of the kings have had that have been before thee, neither shall there any after thee have the like.*

- m.) *[Matthew 26:42]- He went away again the second time, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if this cup may not pass away from me, except I drink it, thy will be done.*
  - n.) *[Luke 22:42-43]- Saying, Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but thine, be done. And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven, strengthening him.*
  - o.) *[Matthew 6:9]- After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name.*
  - p.) *[James 4:3]- Ye ask, and receive not, because ye ask amiss, that ye may consume it upon your lusts.*
- 61.) Strive to bring your soul into order by this duty, however disordered by guilt, anguish, inordinate cares or fears.
- a.) *[Psalm 32:1,5]- Blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered. I acknowledge my sin unto thee, and mine iniquity have I not hid. I said, I will confess my transgressions unto the LORD; and thou forgavest the iniquity of my sin. Selah.*
  - b.) *[Psalm 55:16-17,20,22]- As for me, I will call upon God; and the LORD shall save me. Evening, and morning, and at noon, will I pray, and cry aloud: and he shall hear my voice. He hath put forth his hands against such as be at peace with him: he hath broken his covenant. Cast thy burden upon the LORD, and he shall sustain thee: he shall never suffer the righteous to be moved.*
  - c.) *[Psalm 69:32]- The humble shall see this, and be glad: and your heart shall live that seek God.*
  - d.) *[Philippians 4:6-7]- Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.*
  - e.) *[1 Samuel 1:9-11]- So Hannah rose up after they had eaten in Shiloh, and after they had drunk. Now Eli the priest sat upon a seat by a post of the temple of the LORD. And she was in bitterness of soul, and prayed unto the LORD, and wept sore. And she vowed a vow, and said, O LORD of hosts, if thou wilt indeed look on the affliction of thine handmaid, and remember me, and not forget thine handmaid, but wilt give unto thine handmaid a man child, then I will give him unto the LORD all the days of his life, and there shall no razor come upon his head.*
  - f.) *[Colossians 4:12]- Epaphras, who is one of you, a servant of Christ, saluteth you, always labouring fervently for you in prayers, that ye may stand perfect and complete in all the will of God.*
  - g.) *[Romans 15:30]- Now I beseech you, brethren, for the Lord Jesus Christ's sake, and for the love of the Spirit, that ye strive together with me in your prayers to God for me;*
  - h.) *[Colossians 2:1-2]- For I would that ye knew what great conflict I have for you, and for them at Laodicea, and for as many as have not seen my face in the flesh; That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;*

- i.) *[Isaiah 64:7]- And there is none that calleth upon thy name, that stirreth up himself to take hold of thee: for thou hast hid thy face from us, and hast consumed us, because of our iniquities.*
  - j.) *[Matthew 26:41]- Watch and pray, that ye enter not into temptation: the spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.*
  - k.) *[Romans 8:26-27]- Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because he maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God.*
  - l.) *[Luke 18:1,7]- And he spake a parable unto them to this end, that men ought always to pray, and not to faint; And shall not God avenge his own elect, which cry day and night unto him, though he bear long with them?*
  - m.) *[Psalm 22:1-2]- My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me? why art thou so far from helping me, and from the words of my roaring? O my God, I cry in the day time, but thou hearest not; and in the night season, and am not silent.*
  - n.) *[Luke 22:42]- Saying, Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but thine, be done.*
  - o.) *[Romans 12:12]- Rejoicing in hope; patient in tribulation; continuing instant in prayer;*
  - p.) *[Ephesians 6:18]- Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;*
- 62.) You must make a good use of the whole matter and all the manner of prayer, as ordinary and extraordinary exigencies may require, to stir up grace in you by wrestling, and to bring your hearts into a holy frame.
- a.) *[Psalm 38:18]- For I will declare mine iniquity; I will be sorry for my sin.*
  - b.) *[Psalm 51:3]- For I acknowledge my transgressions: and my sin is ever before me.*
  - c.) *[Psalm 102.1-2]- Hear my prayer, O LORD, and let my cry come unto thee. Hide not thy face from me in the day when I am in trouble; incline thine ear unto me: in the day when I call answer me speedily.*
  - d.) *[Job 23:4]- I would order my cause before him, and fill my mouth with arguments.*
  - e.) *[Numbers 14:17-18]- And now, I beseech thee, let the power of my lord be great, according as thou hast spoken, saying, The LORD is longsuffering, and of great mercy, forgiving iniquity and transgression, and by no means clearing the guilty, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation.*
  - f.) *[2 Samuel 7:26, 28]- And let thy name be magnified for ever, saying, The LORD of hosts is the God over Israel: and let the house of thy servant David be established before thee. And now, O Lord GOD, thou art that God, and thy words be true, and thou hast promised this goodness unto thy servant:*
  - g.) *[Genesis 32:9,12]- And Jacob said, O God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, the LORD which saidst unto me, Return unto thy country, and to thy kindred, and I will deal well with thee: And thou saidst, I will surely do thee good, and make thy seed as the sand of the sea, which cannot be numbered for multitude.*
  - h.) *[Psalm 17:2-3]- Let my sentence come forth from thy presence; let thine eyes behold the things that are equal. Thou hast proved mine heart; thou hast visited*

*me in the night; thou hast tried me, and shalt find nothing; I am purposed that my mouth shall not transgress.*

- i.) *[Psalm 115:1-2]- Not unto us, O LORD, not unto us, but unto thy name give glory, for thy mercy, and for thy truth's sake. Wherefore should the heathen say, Where is now their God?*
  - j.) *[Psalm 79:9-10,13]- Help us, O God of our salvation, for the glory of thy name: and deliver us, and purge away our sins, for thy name's sake. Wherefore should the heathen say, Where is their God? let him be known among the heathen in our sight by the revenging of the blood of thy servants which is shed. So we thy people and sheep of thy pasture will give thee thanks for ever: we will shew forth thy praise to all generations.*
  - k.) *[John 17.15]- I pray not that thou shouldest take them out of the world, but that thou shouldest keep them from the evil.*
  - l.) *[Genesis 32:10]- I am not worthy of the least of all the mercies, and of all the truth, which thou hast shewed unto thy servant; for with my staff I passed over this Jordan; and now I am become two bands.*
  - m.) *[Psalm 18:1-3]- I will love thee, O LORD, my strength. The LORD is my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer; my God, my strength, in whom I will trust; my buckler, and the horn of my salvation, and my high tower. I will call upon the LORD, who is worthy to be praised: so shall I be saved from mine enemies.*
  - n.) *[Psalm 33:1]- Rejoice in the LORD, O ye righteous: for praise is comely for the upright.*
  - o.) *[Psalm 104:34]- My meditation of him shall be sweet: I will be glad in the LORD.*
  - p.) *[Ephesians 1.3]- Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ:*
  - q.) *[Ephesians 5:20]- Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ;*
  - r.) *[1 Thessalonians 5:18]- In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you.*
- 63.) You must not confine and limit your prayers by any prescribed form, seeing it is impossible that any such forms should be contrived as should answer and fit all the various conditions and necessities of the soul at all times.
- a.) *[Matthew 6.5-6]- And when thou prayest, thou shalt not be as the hypocrites are: for they love to pray standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, They have their reward. But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father which is in secret; and thy Father which seeth in secret shall reward thee openly.*
  - b.) *[Luke 11.1-2]- And it came to pass, that, as he was praying in a certain place, when he ceased, one of his disciples said unto him, Lord, teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples. And he said unto them, When ye pray, say, Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name. Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done, as in heaven, so in earth.*
  - c.) *[Ephesians 6:18]- Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;*
  - d.) *[Philippians 4:6]- Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God.*
  - e.) *[John 15:7]- If ye abide in me, and my words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be done unto you.*

- f.) *[1 Thessalonians 5:18]- In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you.*
  - g.) *[Ephesians 5:20]- Giving thanks always for all things unto God and the Father in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ;*
  - h.) *[1 Thessalonians 5:19]- Quench not the Spirit.*
  - i.) *[1 Corinthians 1:5]- That in every thing ye are enriched by him, in all utterance, and in all knowledge;*
  - j.) *[Mark 13:11]- But when they shall lead you, and deliver you up, take no thought beforehand what ye shall speak, neither do ye premeditate: but whatsoever shall be given you in that hour, that speak ye: for it is not ye that speak, but the Holy Ghost.*
  - k.) *[Luke 12:11-12]- And when they bring you unto the synagogues, and unto magistrates, and powers, take ye no thought how or what thing ye shall answer, or what ye shall say: For the Holy Ghost shall teach you in the same hour what ye ought to say.*
  - l.) *[Isaiah 38:14]- Like a crane or a swallow, so did I chatter: I did mourn as a dove: mine eyes fail with looking upward: O LORD, I am oppressed; undertake for me.*
- g. *Singing of psalms*, that is, songs of any sacred subject composed to a tune, hymns or songs of praise and spiritual songs of any sublime spiritual manner, as Psalm 45 and the Song of Solomon. God has commanded it in the New Testament, though now in these days many question whether it is an ordinance or not.
- 1.) *[Colossians 3:16]- Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.*
  - 2.) *[Ephesians 5:19]- Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord;*
  - 3.) *[Psalm 149:1-3]- Praise ye the LORD. Sing unto the LORD a new song, and his praise in the congregation of saints. Let Israel rejoice in him that made him: let the children of Zion be joyful in their King. Let them praise his name in the dance: let them sing praises unto him with the timbrel and harp.*
  - 4.) *[Psalm 96:1]- O sing unto the LORD a new song: sing unto the LORD, all the earth.*
  - 5.) *[Psalm 100:2]- Serve the LORD with gladness: come before his presence with singing.*
  - 6.) *[Exodus 15:1]- Then sang Moses and the children of Israel this song unto the LORD, and spake, saying, I will sing unto the LORD, for he hath triumphed gloriously: the horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea.*
  - 7.) *[2 Samuel 23:1-2]- Now these be the last words of David. David the son of Jesse said, and the man who was raised up on high, the anointed of the God of Jacob, and the sweet psalmist of Israel, said, The Spirit of the LORD spake by me, and his word was in my tongue.*
  - 8.) *[Psalm 40:3]- And he hath put a new song in my mouth, even praise unto our God: many shall see it, and fear, and shall trust in the LORD.*
  - 9.) *[2 Chronicles 29:30]- Moreover Hezekiah the king and the princes commanded the Levites to sing praise unto the LORD with the words of David, and of Asaph the seer. And they sang praises with gladness, and they bowed their heads and worshipped.*
  - 10.) *[Psalm 105:2]- Sing unto him, sing psalms unto him: talk ye of all his wondrous works.*



- 11.) *[1 Kings 4:32]- And he spake three thousand proverbs: and his songs were a thousand and five.*
- 12.) *[Isaiah 38:9-14]- The writing of Hezekiah king of Judah, when he had been sick, and was recovered of his sickness: I said in the cutting off of my days, I shall go to the gates of the grave: I am deprived of the residue of my years. I said, I shall not see the LORD, even the LORD, in the land of the living: I shall behold man no more with the inhabitants of the world. Mine age is departed, and is removed from me as a shepherd's tent: I have cut off like a weaver my life: he will cut me off with pining sickness: from day even to night wilt thou make an end of me. I reckoned till morning, that, as a lion, so will he break all my bones: from day even to night wilt thou make an end of me. Like a crane or a swallow, so did I chatter: I did mourn as a dove: mine eyes fail with looking upward: O LORD, I am oppressed; undertake for me.*
- 13.) *[Psalm 119:54]- Thy statutes have been my songs in the house of my pilgrimage.*
- 14.) *[Matthew 26:30]- And when they had sung an hymn, they went out into the mount of Olives.*
- 15.) *[Romans 15:4]- For whatsoever things were written aforetime were written for our learning, that we through patience and comfort of the scriptures might have hope.*
- 16.) *[2 Corinthians 3:16]- Nevertheless when it shall turn to the Lord, the vail shall be taken away.*
- 17.) *[Galatians 2:17]- But if, while we seek to be justified by Christ, we ourselves also are found sinners, is therefore Christ the minister of sin? God forbid.*
- 18.) *[Acts 16:25]- And at midnight Paul and Silas prayed, and sang praises unto God: and the prisoners heard them.*
- 19.) *[Psalm 38:18]- For I will declare mine iniquity; I will be sorry for my sin.*
- 20.) *[2 Chronicles 35:25]- And Jeremiah lamented for Josiah: and all the singing men and the singing women spake of Josiah in their lamentations to this day, and made them an ordinance in Israel: and, behold, they are written in the lamentations.*
- 21.) Trust not upon the melody of the voice, as if that pleased God, who delights only in the melody of the heart.
- a.) *[Colossians 3:16]- Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.*
- 22.) You must use it for the same end as meditation and prayer, according to the nature of what is sung, that is, to quicken faith (), and joy and delight in the Lord, glorying in Him.
- a.) *[2 Chronicles 20:21-22]- And when he had consulted with the people, he appointed singers unto the LORD, and that should praise the beauty of holiness, as they went out before the army, and to say, Praise the LORD; for his mercy endureth for ever. And when they began to sing and to praise, the LORD set ambushments against the children of Ammon, Moab, and mount Seir, which were come against Judah; and they were smitten.*
- b.) *[Acts 16:25-26]- And at midnight Paul and Silas prayed, and sang praises unto God: and the prisoners heard them. And suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken: and immediately all the doors were opened, and every one's bands were loosed.*
- c.) *[Psalm 104:33-34]- I will sing unto the LORD as long as I live: I will sing praise to my God while I have my being. My meditation of him shall be sweet: I will be glad in the LORD.*

- d.) *[Psalm 105:3]- Glory ye in his holy name: let the heart of them rejoice that seek the LORD.*
  - e.) *[Psalm 149:1-2]- Praise ye the LORD. Sing unto the LORD a new song, and his praise in the congregation of saints. Let Israel rejoice in him that made him: let the children of Zion be joyful in their King.*
  - f.) *[Psalm 33:1-3]- Rejoice in the LORD, O ye righteous: for praise is comely for the upright. Praise the LORD with harp: sing unto him with the psaltery and an instrument of ten strings. Sing unto him a new song; play skilfully with a loud noise.*
  - g.) *[James 5:13]- Is any among you afflicted? let him pray. Is any merry? let him sing psalms.*
  - h.) *[Ephesians 5:19]- Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord;*
- h.** *Fasting is also an ordinance of God to be used for the same purpose and end and is commended to us under the New Testament.*
- 1.) *[Matthew 9:15]- And Jesus said unto them, Can the children of the bridechamber mourn, as long as the bridegroom is with them? but the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken from them, and then shall they fast.*
  - 2.) *[Matthew 17:21]- Howbeit this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting.*
  - 3.) *[1 Corinthians 7:5]- Defraud ye not one the other, except it be with consent for a time, that ye may give yourselves to fasting and prayer; and come together again, that Satan tempt you not for your incontinency.*
  - 4.) *[Acts 13:2-3]- As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them. And when they had fasted and prayed, and laid their hands on them, they sent them away.*
  - 5.) *[Acts 14:23]- And when they had ordained them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they commended them to the Lord, on whom they believed.*
  - 6.) *[1 Samuel 7:6]- And they gathered together to Mizpeh, and drew water, and poured it out before the LORD, and fasted on that day, and said there, We have sinned against the LORD. And Samuel judged the children of Israel in Mizpeh.*
  - 7.) *[Nehemiah 9:1]- Now in the twenty and fourth day of this month the children of Israel were assembled with fasting, and with sackclothes, and earth upon them.*
  - 8.) *[Daniel 9:3]- And I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes:*
  - 9.) *[Daniel 10:2-3]- In those days I Daniel was mourning three full weeks. I ate no pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled.*
  - 10.) *[2 Samuel 12:16]- David therefore besought God for the child; and David fasted, and went in, and lay all night upon the earth.*
  - 11.) *[Psalm 35:13]- But as for me, when they were sick, my clothing was sackcloth: I humbled my soul with fasting; and my prayer returned into mine own bosom.*
  - 12.) *[2 Samuel 3:31,35]- And David said to Joab, and to all the people that were with him, Rend your clothes, and gird you with sackcloth, and mourn before Abner. And king David himself followed the bier. And when all the people came to cause David to eat meat while it was yet day, David sware, saying, So do God to me, and more also, if I taste bread, or ought else, till the sun be down.*
  - 13.) *[Joel 2:12-13]- Therefore also now, saith the LORD, turn ye even to me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning: And rend your heart,*

*and not your garments, and turn unto the LORD your God: for he is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repenteth him of the evil.*

- 14.) *[Leviticus 16:29,31]- And this shall be a statute for ever unto you: that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, ye shall afflict your souls, and do no work at all, whether it be one of your own country, or a stranger that sojourneth among you: It shall be a sabbath of rest unto you, and ye shall afflict your souls, by a statute for ever.*
- 15.) *[Zechariah 12:12]- And the land shall mourn, every family apart; the family of the house of David apart, and their wives apart; the family of the house of Nathan apart, and their wives apart;*
- 16.) *[Joel 1:14]- Sanctify ye a fast, call a solemn assembly, gather the elders and all the inhabitants of the land into the house of the LORD your God, and cry unto the LORD,*
- 17.) *[Joel 2:12]- Therefore also now, saith the LORD, turn ye even to me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning:*
- 18.) Trust not in it as meriting or satisfying, as Papists and Pharisees do, putting it in the place of Christ; or as a means of itself conferring grace and mortifying lusts, as many do, who may sooner kill their bodies than their lusts; or as any purifying rite; yea, or in or for itself acceptable to God.
- a.) *[Luke 18:12]- I fast twice in the week, I give tithes of all that I possess.*
- b.) *[1 Timothy 4:8]- For bodily exercise profiteth little: but godliness is profitable unto all things, having promise of the life that now is, and of that which is to come.*
- c.) *[Hebrews 13:9]- Be not carried about with divers and strange doctrines. For it is a good thing that the heart be established with grace; not with meats, which have not profited them that have been occupied therein.*
- d.) *[Colossians 2:16-17,20,23]- Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the sabbath days: Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ. Wherefore if ye be dead with Christ from the rudiments of the world, why, as though living in the world, are ye subject to ordinances, Which things have indeed a shew of wisdom in will worship, and humility, and neglecting of the body: not in any honour to the satisfying of the flesh.*
- e.) *[Romans 14:17]- For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost.*
- f.) *[Isaiah 58:3,6]- Wherefore have we fasted, say they, and thou seest not? wherefore have we afflicted our soul, and thou takest no knowledge? Behold, in the day of your fast ye find pleasure, and exact all your labours. Is not this the fast that I have chosen? to loose the bands of wickedness, to undo the heavy burdens, and to let the oppressed go free, and that ye break every yoke?*
- g.) *[Zechariah 7:5-6,10]- Speak unto all the people of the land, and to the priests, saying, When ye fasted and mourned in the fifth and seventh month, even those seventy years, did ye at all fast unto me, even to me? And when ye did eat, and when ye did drink, did not ye eat for yourselves, and drink for yourselves? And oppress not the widow, nor the fatherless, the stranger, nor the poor; and let none of you imagine evil against his brother in your heart.*
- 19.) Use it as a help to extraordinary prayer and humiliation, that the mind may not be unsuited for it by eating, drinking or bodily pleasures.

- a.) *[Joel 2:13]- And rend your heart, and not your garments, and turn unto the LORD your God: for he is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repenteth him of the evil.*
- b.) *[Isaiah 22:12-13]- And in that day did the Lord GOD of hosts call to weeping, and to mourning, and to baldness, and to girding with sackcloth: And behold joy and gladness, slaying oxen, and killing sheep, eating flesh, and drinking wine: let us eat and drink; for to morrow we shall die.*
- c.) *[Zechariah 12:10-14]- And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn. In that day shall there be a great mourning in Jerusalem, as the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the valley of Megiddon. And the land shall mourn, every family apart; the family of the house of David apart, and their wives apart; the family of the house of Nathan apart, and their wives apart; The family of the house of Levi apart, and their wives apart; the family of Shimei apart, and their wives apart; All the families that remain, every family apart, and their wives apart.*
- d.) *[Matthew 3:4]- And the same John had his raiment of camel's hair, and a leathern girdle about his loins; and his meat was locusts and wild honey.*

20.) Use it in such a measure as may be proper for its end, without which it is worth nothing.

- a.) *[Daniel 10:2-3]- In those days I Daniel was mourning three full weeks. I ate no pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled.*
- b.) *[1 Corinthians 7:7-9,34-36]- For I would that all men were even as I myself. But every man hath his proper gift of God, one after this manner, and another after that. I say therefore to the unmarried and widows, it is good for them if they abide even as I. But if they cannot contain, let them marry: for it is better to marry than to burn. There is difference also between a wife and a virgin. The unmarried woman careth for the things of the Lord, that she may be holy both in body and in spirit: but she that is married careth for the things of the world, how she may please her husband. And this I speak for your own profit; not that I may cast a snare upon you, but for that which is comely, and that ye may attend upon the Lord without distraction. But if any man think that he behaveth himself uncomely toward his virgin, if she pass the flower of her age, and need so require, let him do what he will, he sinneth not: let them marry.*
- c.) *[Matthew 9:14-15]- Then came to him the disciples of John, saying, Why do we and the Pharisees fast oft, but thy disciples fast not? And Jesus said unto them, Can the children of the bridechamber mourn, as long as the bridegroom is with them? but the days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken from them, and then shall they fast.*

- i. You may expect here something to be spoken of vows. But I shall only say this of them. Think not to bring yourselves to good by vows and promises, as if the strength of your own law could do it when the strength of God's law does it not. We bring children to make promises of amendment, but we know how well they keep them. The devil will urge you to vow, and then to break, that he may perplex your conscience the more.
- j. Fellowship and communion with the saints.

- 1.) *[Acts 2:42]- And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.*
- 2.) This mean must be used diligently.
  - a.) *[Acts 2:41,44,47]- Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls. And all that believed were together, and had all things common; Praising God, and having favour with all the people. And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved.*
  - b.) *[1 John 2:19]- They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would no doubt have continued with us: but they went out, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us.*
  - c.) *[2 Corinthians 6:17]- Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you.*
  - d.) *[1 Corinthians 5:9]- I wrote unto you in an epistle not to company with fornicators:*
  - e.) *[Psalm 101:4-7]- A froward heart shall depart from me: I will not know a wicked person. Whoso privily slandereth his neighbour, him will I cut off: him that hath an high look and a proud heart will not I suffer. Mine eyes shall be upon the faithful of the land, that they may dwell with me: he that walketh in a perfect way, he shall serve me. He that worketh deceit shall not dwell within my house: he that telleth lies shall not tarry in my sight.*
  - f.) *[Hebrews 10: 25]- Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching.*
  - g.) *[Zechariah 14:16-17]- And it shall come to pass, that every one that is left of all the nations which came against Jerusalem shall even go up from year to year to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, and to keep the feast of tabernacles. And it shall be, that whoso will not come up of all the families of the earth unto Jerusalem to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, even upon them shall be no rain.*
  - h.) It ought to be used for the attainment of holiness as may be proved.
    - 1.) *God communicates all salvation to a people ordinarily by, or in a church, either by taking them into fellowship, or holding forth the light of truth by His churches to the world.*
      - a.) *[1 Timothy 3:15]- But if I tarry long, that thou mayest know how thou oughtest to behave thyself in the house of God, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth.*
      - b.) *[Joel 2:32]- And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the LORD shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the LORD hath said, and in the remnant whom the LORD shall call.*
      - c.) *[2 Chronicles 6:5-6]- Since the day that I brought forth my people out of the land of Egypt I chose no city among all the tribes of Israel to build an house in, that my name might be there; neither chose I any man to be a ruler over my people Israel: But I have chosen Jerusalem, that my name might be there; and have chosen David to be over my people Israel.*
      - d.) *[1 Corinthians 12:28]- And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues.*

- e.) *[Psalm 87:7]- As well the singers as the players on instruments shall be there: all my springs are in thee.*
- f.) *[Ephesians 4:16]- From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.*
- g.) *[Isaiah 66:8,11]- Who hath heard such a thing? who hath seen such things? Shall the earth be made to bring forth in one day? or shall a nation be born at once? for as soon as Zion travailed, she brought forth her children. That ye may suck, and be satisfied with the breasts of her consolations; that ye may milk out, and be delighted with the abundance of her glory.*
- h.) *[Isaiah 49:20]- The children which thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the other, shall say again in thine ears, The place is too strait for me: give place to me that I may dwell.*
- i.) *[Isaiah 60:4]- Lift up thine eyes round about, and see: all they gather themselves together, they come to thee: thy sons shall come from far, and thy daughters shall be nursed at thy side.*
- j.) *[Psalm 122:2,4,6]- Our feet shall stand within thy gates, O Jerusalem. Whither the tribes go up, the tribes of the LORD, unto the testimony of Israel, to give thanks unto the name of the LORD. Pray for the peace of Jerusalem: they shall prosper that love thee.*
- k.) *[Song of Solomon 1:7-8]- Tell me, O thou whom my soul loveth, where thou feedest, where thou makest thy flock to rest at noon: for why should I be as one that turneth aside by the flocks of thy companions? If thou know not, O thou fairest among women, go thy way forth by the footsteps of the flock, and feed thy kids beside the shepherds' tents.*
- l.) *[Zechariah 8:23]- Thus saith the LORD of hosts; In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard that God is with you.*

2.) Fellowship with the saints conduces to holiness many ways.

- a.) By manifold helps to holiness, which are received thereby, as:
  - 1.) The Word and sacraments, and all the ministerial office and labor in watching our souls.
    - a.) *[Acts 2:42]- And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.*
    - b.) *[Isaiah 2:3]- And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.*
    - c.) *[Matthew 28:19-20]- Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.*
    - d.) *[Hebrews 13:17]- Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your souls, as they that*

*must give account, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that is unprofitable for you.*

- e.) *[1 Thessalonians 5:12-13]- And we beseech you, brethren, to know them which labour among you, and are over you in the Lord, and admonish you; And to esteem them very highly in love for their work's sake. And be at peace among yourselves.*
  - f.) *[Isaiah 25:6]- And in this mountain shall the LORD of hosts make unto all people a feast of fat things, a feast of wines on the lees, of fat things full of marrow, of wines on the lees well refined.*
- 2.) Mutual prayer, which is the more forcible when all pray together.
- a.) *[Matthew 18:19-20]- Again I say unto you, That if two of you shall agree on earth as touching any thing that they shall ask, it shall be done for them of my Father which is in heaven. For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them.*
  - b.) *[2 Corinthians 1:10-11]- Who delivered us from so great a death, and doth deliver: in whom we trust that he will yet deliver us; Ye also helping together by prayer for us, that for the gift bestowed upon us by the means of many persons thanks may be given by many on our behalf.*
  - c.) *[James 5:16]- Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, that ye may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much.*
  - d.) *[Romans 15:30]- Now I beseech you, brethren, for the Lord Jesus Christ's sake, and for the love of the Spirit, that ye strive together with me in your prayers to God for me;*
- 3.) Mutual admonition, instruction, consolation, to help each other when they are ready to fall, and to promote the good work in each other.
- a.) *[1 Thessalonians 5:14]- Now we exhort you, brethren, warn them that are unruly, comfort the feebleminded, support the weak, be patient toward all men.*
  - b.) *[Proverbs 13:20]- He that walketh with wise men shall be wise: but a companion of fools shall be destroyed.*
  - c.) *[Ecclesiastes 4:9-12]- Two are better than one; because they have a good reward for their labour. For if they fall, the one will lift up his fellow: but woe to him that is alone when he falleth; for he hath not another to help him up. Again, if two lie together, then they have heat: but how can one be warm alone? And if one prevail against him, two shall withstand him; and a threefold cord is not quickly broken.*
  - d.) *[Song of Solomon 6:4,10]- Thou art beautiful, O my love, as Tirzah, comely as Jerusalem, terrible as an army with banners. Who is she that looketh forth as the morning, fair as the moon, clear as the sun, and terrible as an army with banners?*
  - e.) *[Proverbs 27:17]- Iron sharpeneth iron; so a man sharpeneth the countenance of his friend.*

- f.) *[Proverbs 27:9]- Ointment and perfume rejoice the heart: so doth the sweetness of a man's friend by hearty counsel.*
- g.) *[Psalm 141:5]- Let the righteous smite me; it shall be a kindness: and let him reprove me; it shall be an excellent oil, which shall not break my head: for yet my prayer also shall be in their calamities.*
- 4.) External supports, which mitigate afflictions, and are to be communicated mutually.
- a.) *[Ephesians 4:28]- Let him that stole steal no more: but rather let him labour, working with his hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth.*
- b.) *[1 Peter 4:9-10]- Use hospitality one to another without grudging. As every man hath received the gift, even so minister the same one to another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God.*
- c.) *[Psalm 142:4]- I looked on my right hand, and beheld, but there was no man that would know me: refuge failed me; no man cared for my soul.*
- 5.) Excommunication, when offences are exceeding heinous or men obstinate in sin.
- a.) *[1 Corinthians 5:5]- To deliver such an one unto Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus.*
- b.) *[2 Thessalonians 3:15]- Yet count him not as an enemy, but admonish him as a brother.*
- c.) *[2 Peter 2:21]- For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them.*
- 6.) The lively examples of saints are before our eyes in church fellowship, to teach and encourage.
- a.) *[Philippians 3:17]- Brethren, be followers together of me, and mark them which walk so as ye have us for an ensample.*
- b.) *[Philippians 4:9]- Those things, which ye have both learned, and received, and heard, and seen in me, do: and the God of peace shall be with you.*
- c.) *[2 Timothy 3:10-11]- But thou hast fully known my doctrine, manner of life, purpose, faith, longsuffering, charity, patience, Persecutions, afflictions, which came unto me at Antioch, at Iconium, at Lystra; what persecutions I endured: but out of them all the Lord delivered me.*
- d.) *[2 Corinthians 9:2]- For I know the forwardness of your mind, for which I boast of you to them of Macedonia, that Achaia was ready a year ago; and your zeal hath provoked very many.*
- b.) By those holy duties that are required and do appertain to this fellowship and communion.



- 1.) Godly discourse, teaching, admonishing, comforting others in Christ, which we cannot so perform towards others as towards those we have strict fellowship with in Christ.
  - a.) *[Amos 5:10,13]- They hate him that rebuketh in the gate, and they abhor him that speaketh uprightly. Therefore the prudent shall keep silence in that time; for it is an evil time.*
  - b.) *[Amos 6:10]- And a man's uncle shall take him up, and he that burneth him, to bring out the bones out of the house, and shall say unto him that is by the sides of the house, Is there yet any with thee? and he shall say, No. Then shall he say, Hold thy tongue: for we may not make mention of the name of the LORD.*
  - c.) *[Malachi 3:16]- Then they that feared the LORD spake often one to another: and the LORD hearkened, and heard it, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the LORD, and that thought upon his name.*
  - d.) *[Proverbs 11:25]- The liberal soul shall be made fat: and he that watereth shall be watered also himself.*
  
- 2.) In helping, succoring and conversing with Christ in His members.
  - a.) *[Matthew 25:35-40]- For I was an hungred, and ye gave me meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me drink: I was a stranger, and ye took me in: Naked, and ye clothed me: I was sick, and ye visited me: I was in prison, and ye came unto me. Then shall the righteous answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee an hungred, and fed thee? or thirsty, and gave thee drink? When saw we thee a stranger, and took thee in? or naked, and clothed thee? Or when saw we thee sick, or in prison, and came unto thee? And the King shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it unto me.*
  - b.) *[Psalm 16:2-3]- O my soul, thou hast said unto the LORD, Thou art my Lord: my goodness extendeth not to thee; But to the saints that are in the earth, and to the excellent, in whom is all my delight.*
  
- 3.) The means must be used rightly, for the attaining of holiness only in Christ.
  - a.) One rule is 'Do not trust in church membership', or on churches, as if this or that relation in fellowship commended you to God of itself, whereas, a church way is but a help to fellowship with Christ and walking in the duties of that fellowship.
    - 1.) *[Philippians 3:3-5]- For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh. Though I might also have confidence in the flesh. If any other man thinketh that he hath whereof he might trust in the flesh, I more: Circumcised the eighth day, of the stock of Israel, of the tribe of Benjamin, an Hebrew of the Hebrews; as touching the law, a Pharisee;*
    - 2.) *[1 Corinthians 1:12-13]- Now this I say, that every one of you saith, I am of Paul; and I of Apollos; and I of Cephas; and I of Christ. Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were ye baptized in the name of Paul?*
    - 3.) *[1 Corinthians 3:21]- Therefore let no man glory in men. For all things are your's;*

- 4.) *[Jeremiah 7:4,8-10]- Trust ye not in lying words, saying, The temple of the LORD, The temple of the LORD, The temple of the LORD, are these. Behold, ye trust in lying words, that cannot profit. Will ye steal, murder, and commit adultery, and swear falsely, and burn incense unto Baal, and walk after other gods whom ye know not; And come and stand before me in this house, which is called by my name, and say, We are delivered to do all these abominations?*
  - 5.) *[Isaiah 1:10]- Hear the word of the LORD, ye rulers of Sodom; give ear unto the law of our God, ye people of Gomorrah.*
  - 6.) *[2 Timothy 2:20]- But in a great house there are not only vessels of gold and of silver, but also of wood and of earth; and some to honour, and some to dishonour.*
- b.) Follow no church any farther than you may follow it in the way of Christ, and keep fellowship with it only upon the account of Christ, because it follows Christ and has fellowship with Christ.
- 1.) *[1 John 1:3]- That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.*
  - 2.) *[Zechariah 8:23]- Thus saith the LORD of hosts; In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard that God is with you.*
  - 3.) *[Philippians 3:6]- Concerning zeal, persecuting the church; touching the righteousness which is in the law, blameless.*
  - 4.) *[Acts 6:13-14]- And set up false witnesses, which said, This man ceaseth not to speak blasphemous words against this holy place, and the law: For we have heard him say, that this Jesus of Nazareth shall destroy this place, and shall change the customs which Moses delivered us.*
  - 5.) *[Acts 21:28]- Crying out, Men of Israel, help: This is the man, that teacheth all men every where against the people, and the law, and this place: and further brought Greeks also into the temple, and hath polluted this holy place.*
  - 6.) *[John 10:27]- My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:*
  - 7.) *[1 Corinthians 4:1]- Let a man so account of us, as of the ministers of Christ, and stewards of the mysteries of God.*
  - 8.) *[2 Corinthians 8:5]- And this they did, not as we hoped, but first gave their own selves to the Lord, and unto us by the will of God.*
  - 9.) *[Matt 15.12-14]- Then came his disciples, and said unto him, Knowest thou that the Pharisees were offended, after they heard this saying? But he answered and said, Every plant, which my heavenly Father hath not planted, shall be rooted up. Let them alone: they be blind leaders of the blind. And if the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch.*
  - 10.) *[Acts 17:11]- These were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, and searched the scriptures daily, whether those things were so.*
  - 11.) *[1 Corinthians 1:13]- Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were ye baptized in the name of Paul?*

- c.) Do not think that you must attain this or that degree of grace, before you join yourself in full communion with a church of Christ in all ordinances. But when you have given up yourself to Christ, and learned the duty of communion, give up yourself unto a church of Christ, though you find much weakness and inability.
- 1.) *[Acts 2:42]- And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.*
  - 2.) *[Isaiah 66:12]- For thus saith the LORD, Behold, I will extend peace to her like a river, and the glory of the Gentiles like a flowing stream: then shall ye suck, ye shall be borne upon her sides, and be dandled upon her knees.*
  - 3.) *[Ephesians 4:2-3]- With all lowliness and meekness, with longsuffering, forbearing one another in love; Endeavouring to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace.*
  - 4.) *[Romans 14:1]- Him that is weak in the faith receive ye, but not to doubtful disputations.*
  - 5.) *[Romans 15:7]- Wherefore receive ye one another, as Christ also received us to the glory of God.*
  - 6.) *[1 Corinthians 12:23-24]- And those members of the body, which we think to be less honourable, upon these we bestow more abundant honour; and our uncomely parts have more abundant comeliness. For our comely parts have no need: but God hath tempered the body together, having given more abundant honour to that part which lacked.*
- d.) Keep communion with a church for the sake of communion with Christ.
- 1.) *[1 John 1:3]- That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.*
  - 2.) *[Zechariah 8:23]- Thus saith the LORD of hosts; In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard that God is with you.*
  - 3.) *[2 Corinthians 5:16-17]- Wherefore henceforth know we no man after the flesh: yea, though we have known Christ after the flesh, yet now henceforth know we him no more. Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.*
  - 4.) *[Revelation 2:2]- I know thy works, and thy labour, and thy patience, and how thou canst not bear them which are evil: and thou hast tried them which say they are apostles, and are not, and hast found them liars:*
  - 5.) *[Revelation 3:9]- Behold, I will make them of the synagogue of Satan, which say they are Jews, and are not, but do lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before thy feet, and to know that I have loved thee.*
  - 6.) *[1 Corinthians 10:17]- For we being many are one bread, and one body: for we are all partakers of that one bread.*
  - 7.) *[Colossians 4:9]- With Onesimus, a faithful and beloved brother, who is one of you. They shall make known unto you all things which are done here.*
  - 8.) *[Philemon 10]- I beseech thee for my son Onesimus, whom I have begotten in my bonds:*
- e.) Leave not the church in persecution, when you need its help most and are then most tried whether you will cleave to it.

- 1.) *[Hebrews 10:25-26]- Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching. For if we sin wilfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins,*
- 2.) *[Matthew 24:9-14]- Then shall they deliver you up to be afflicted, and shall kill you: and ye shall be hated of all nations for my name's sake. And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another. And many false prophets shall rise, and shall deceive many. And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold. But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved. And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.*
- 3.) *[Matthew 25:43]- I was a stranger, and ye took me not in: naked, and ye clothed me not: sick, and in prison, and ye visited me not.*

XIV. *That you may seek holiness and righteousness only by believing in Christ and walking in Him by faith, according to the former directions, take encouragement from the great advantages of this way and the excellent properties of it.*

A. Direction may serve as an epilogue or conclusion by stirring us up unto a lively and cheerful embracing those gospel rules aforementioned by several weighty motives. Many are kept from seeking godliness because they know not the way to it; or the way that they think of seems uncouth, unpleasant, disadvantageous and full of discouragement, like the way through the wilderness to Canaan, which wearied the Israelites and occasioned their many murmurings.

1. *[Numbers 21:4]- And they journeyed from mount Hor by the way of the Red sea, to compass the land of Edom: and the soul of the people was much discouraged because of the way.*

B. It has this property that it tends to the abasement of all flesh and exaltation of God only, in His grace and power through Christ.

1. Proof texts.

- a. *[Romans 11:6]- And if by grace, then is it no more of works: otherwise grace is no more grace. But if it be of works, then it is no more grace: otherwise work is no more work.*
- b. *[Isaiah 2:17]- And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low: and the LORD alone shall be exalted in that day.*
- c. *[Ezekiel 36:21-23,31-32]- But I had pity for mine holy name, which the house of Israel had profaned among the heathen, whither they went. Therefore say unto the house of Israel, thus saith the Lord GOD; I do not this for your sakes, O house of Israel, but for mine holy name's sake, which ye have profaned among the heathen, whither ye went. And I will sanctify my great name, which was profaned among the heathen, which ye have profaned in the midst of them; and the heathen shall know that I am the LORD, saith the Lord GOD, when I shall be sanctified in you before their eyes. Then shall ye remember your own evil ways, and your doings that were not good, and shall lothe yourselves in your own sight for your iniquities and for your abominations. Not for your sakes do I this, saith the Lord GOD, be it known unto you: be ashamed and confounded for your own ways, O house of Israel.*
- d. *[Psalm 145:4]- One generation shall praise thy works to another, and shall declare thy mighty acts.*
- e. *[Matthew 6:9]- After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name.*
- f. *[1 Corinthians 10:31]- Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.*

- g. *[Romans 3:19-20]- Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God. Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.*
  - h. *[Colossians 1:17-18]- And he is before all things, and by him all things consist. And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence.*
  - i. *[John 14:13]- And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son.*
  - j. *[John 7:18]- He that speaketh of himself seeketh his own glory: but he that seeketh his glory that sent him, the same is true, and no unrighteousness is in him.*
  - k. *[Romans 3:27-28]- Where is boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? of works? Nay: but by the law of faith. Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law.*
  - l. *[1 Corinthians 1:29-31]- That no flesh should glory in his presence. But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption: That, according as it is written, He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.*
  - m. *[Ephesians 3:8-9]- Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ; And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ:*
2. It shows that we can do nothing by our natural will, or any power of the flesh, and that God will not enable us to do anything that way, however nature is stirred up by the law or natural helps.
- a. *[Romans 7:18]- For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not.*
  - b. *[Galatians 3:11,21]- But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident: for, The just shall live by faith. Is the law then against the promises of God? God forbid: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law.*
3. It shows that all our good works and living to God are not by our own power and strength at all, but by the power of Christ living in us by faith; and that God enables us to act, not merely according to our natural power, as He enables carnal men and all other creatures, but above our own power by Christ united to us and in us through the Spirit.
- a. *[Hebrews 1:3]- Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high:*
  - b. *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
  - c. *[Ephesians 3:16-17]- That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man; That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love,*
  - d. *[Colossians 1:11]- Strengthened with all might, according to his glorious power, unto all patience and longsuffering with joyfulness;*

- e. *[1 Corinthians 15:10]- But by the grace of God I am what I am: and his grace which was bestowed upon me was not in vain; but I laboured more abundantly than they all: yet not I, but the grace of God which was with me.*
- f. *[Philippians 1:11]- Being filled with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ, unto the glory and praise of God.*
- g. *[Acts 17:28]- For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.*
- h. *[Hosea 1:7]- But I will have mercy upon the house of Judah, and will save them by the LORD their God, and will not save them by bow, nor by sword, nor by battle, by horses, nor by horsemen.*
- i. *[Luke 18:11]- The Pharisee stood and prayed thus with himself, God, I thank thee, that I am not as other men are, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even as this publican.*
- j. *[Colossians 3:11]- Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.*
- k. *[2 Corinthians 1:20]- For all the promises of God in him are yea, and in him Amen, unto the glory of God by us.*

C. It has this property that it consists well with other doctrines of the gospel; which contrary errors do not.

- I. The doctrine of original sin, that is, not only the guilt of Adam's sin and a corrupt nature, but utter impotency to do spiritual good, and proneness to sin, which is death to God, in all people according to nature.
  - a. *[Psalm 51:5]- Behold, I was shapen in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me.*
  - b. *[Romans 5:12]- Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:*
  - c. *[2 Corinthians 1:9]- But we had the sentence of death in ourselves, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in God which raiseth the dead:*
  - d. *[Matthew 9:12-13]- But when Jesus heard that, he said unto them, They that be whole need not a physician, but they that are sick. But go ye and learn what that meaneth, I will have mercy, and not sacrifice: for I am not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance.*
  - e. *[Romans 7:24-25]- O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death? I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.*
  - f. *[2 Corinthians 3:5]- Not that we are sufficient of ourselves to think any thing as of ourselves; but our sufficiency is of God;*
  - g. *[Ephesians 5:14]- Wherefore he saith, Awake thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and Christ shall give thee light.*
  - h. *[1 Thessalonians 1:4-5]- Knowing, brethren beloved, your election of God. For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake.*
  - i. *[Acts 26:18]- To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.*
- 2. It confirms us in the doctrine of predestination, which many deny, because they say it takes men off from endeavors, as fruitless, by telling men that all events are predetermined. This argument would be more forcible against endeavors by the power of our own free will, but not

at all against endeavors for holiness by the operation of God, giving us faith and all holiness by His own Spirit working in us through Christ.

- a. *[Matthew 3:17]- And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.*
  - b. *[Luke 2:14]- Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men.*
  - c. *[Psalm 106:4-5]- Remember me, O LORD, with the favour that thou bearest unto thy people: O visit me with thy salvation; That I may see the good of thy chosen, that I may rejoice in the gladness of thy nation, that I may glory with thine inheritance.*
  - d. *[Romans 11:5-6]- Even so then at this present time also there is a remnant according to the election of grace. And if by grace, then is it no more of works: otherwise grace is no more grace. But if it be of works, then it is no more grace: otherwise work is no more work.*
  - e. *[Romans 9:16]- So then it is not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of God that sheweth mercy.*
  - f. *[Psalm 110:3]- Thy people shall be willing in the day of thy power, in the beauties of holiness from the womb of the morning: thou hast the dew of thy youth.*
  - g. *[Philippians 2:12-13]- Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling. For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure.*
  - h. *[Ephesians 2:10]- For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.*
  - i. *[Acts 15:18,36]- Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world. And some days after Paul said unto Barnabas, Let us go again and visit our brethren in every city where we have preached the word of the LORD, and see how they do.*
3. It confirms us in the true doctrine of justification and reconciliation with God by faith, relying on the merits of Christ's blood, without any works of our own, and without considering faith as a work to procure favor by the righteousness of the act, but only as a hand to receive the gift, or as the very eating and drinking of Christ actually, rather than any kind of condition entitling us to Him as our food.
- a. *[Romans 6:11,14]- Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord. For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.*
  - b. *[Romans 7:4-5]- Wherefore, my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another, even to him who is raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto God. For when we were in the flesh, the motions of sins, which were by the law, did work in our members to bring forth fruit unto death.*
  - c. *[Romans 8:1-2]- There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.*
  - d. *[1 John 4:19]- We love him, because he first loved us.*
4. It confirms us in the doctrine of real union with Christ, so plentifully held forth in Scripture, which doctrine some account a vain notion, and cannot endure it, because they think it works not holiness, but presumption; whereas I have shown that it is absolutely necessary for the enjoyment of spiritual life and holiness, which is treasured up in Christ - and that so inseparably that we cannot have it without a real union with Him.

- a. *[2 Corinthians 13:5]- Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates?*
  - b. *[1 John 5:12]- He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.*
  - c. *[John 6:53]- Then Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink his blood, ye have no life in you.*
  - d. *[John 15:5]- I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without me ye can do nothing.*
  - e. *[1 Corinthians 1:30]- But of him are ye in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption:*
  - f. *[Colossians 3:11]- Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.*
5. It confirms us in the doctrine of certain final perseverance of the saints.
- a. *[John 3:36]- He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.*
  - b. *[John 6:37]- All that the Father giveth me shall come to me; and him that cometh to me I will in no wise cast out.*
  - c. *[John 5:24]- Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.*
  - d. *[1 John 3:9]- Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.*
  - e. *[1 Thessalonians 5:24]- Faithful is he that calleth you, who also will do it.*
  - f. *[Philippians 1:6]- Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ:*
  - g. *[John 10:28-29]- And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand. My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand.*
  - h. *[John 4:14]- But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.*
  - i. *[Romans 6:14]- For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.*
  - j. *[Numbers 13:30]- And Caleb stilled the people before Moses, and said, Let us go up at once, and possess it; for we are well able to overcome it.*
  - k. *[1 Thessalonians 5:8-11]- But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for an helmet, the hope of salvation. For God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ, Who died for us, that, whether we wake or sleep, we should live together with him. Wherefore comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also ye do.*

**D.** It has this excellent property that it is the never-failing, effectually powerful, alone sufficient and sure way to attain to true holiness.

**I.** Proof texts.

- a. *[2 Kings 7.6]- For the LORD had made the host of the Syrians to hear a noise of chariots, and a noise of horses, even the noise of a great host: and they said one to another, Lo,*



*the king of Israel hath hired against us the kings of the Hittites, and the kings of the Egyptians, to come upon us.*

- b. *[Isaiah 55:2-3,7]- Wherefore do ye spend money for that which is not bread? and your labour for that which satisfieth not? hearken diligently unto me, and eat ye that which is good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness. Incline your ear, and come unto me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David. Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.*
  - c. *[Galatians 4:25]- For this Agar is mount Sinai in Arabia, and answereth to Jerusalem which now is, and is in bondage with her children.*
  - d. *[Romans 9:21]- Hath not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel unto honour, and another unto dishonour?*
  - e. *[Isaiah 50:11]- Behold, all ye that kindle a fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks: walk in the light of your fire, and in the sparks that ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand; ye shall lie down in sorrow.*
2. Because as we are under the law in our natural state, we are dead and children of wrath.
- a. *[Ephesians 2:1,3]- And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.*
  - b. *[Galatians 3:10,21]- For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them. Is the law then against the promises of God? God forbid: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law.*
  - c. *[Romans 5:6]- For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly.*
3. In this way only God is reconciled of us, even in Christ.
- a. *[2 Corinthians 5:19]- To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.*
  - b. *[Ephesians 1:7]- In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;*
  - c. *[Romans 8:5]- For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit.*
  - d. *[Galatians 5:17]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.*
  - e. *[2 Peter 1:3,4]- According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue: Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.*
  - f. *[1 John 3:9]- Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.*

**E.** It is a most pleasant way to those that are in it, and that in several respects.

1. Proof text.
  - a. *[Proverbs 3:17]- Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.*
  
2. It is a most plain way, easy to be found, to one that sees his own deadness under the law, and is so renewed in the spirit of his mind as to know and be persuaded of the truth of the gospel.
  - a. *[Isaiah 35:8]- And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein.*
  - b. *[Proverbs 8:9]- They are all plain to him that understandeth, and right to them that find knowledge.*
  - c. *[Proverbs 4:18]- But the path of the just is as the shining light, that shineth more and more unto the perfect day.*
  - d. *[I John 2:27]- But the anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in him.*
  - e. *[John 16:13]- Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.*
  - f. *[Psalm 25:8-9,14]- Good and upright is the LORD: therefore will he teach sinners in the way. The meek will he guide in judgment: and the meek will he teach his way. The secret of the LORD is with them that fear him; and he will shew them his covenant.*
  - g. *[Galatians 5:7,10]- Ye did run well; who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth? I have confidence in you through the Lord, that ye will be none otherwise minded: but he that troubleth you shall bear his judgment, whosoever he be.*
  
3. It is easy to those that walk in it by the Spirit, though it be difficult to get into it by reason of the opposition of the flesh, or devil, scaring us or seducing us from it.
  - a. *[John 7:38]- He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.*
  - b. *[Isaiah 55:1]- Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price.*
  - c. *[Revelation 22:17]- And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.*
  - d. *[Matthew 23:4]- For they bind heavy burdens and grievous to be borne, and lay them on men's shoulders; but they themselves will not move them with one of their fingers.*
  - e. *[Acts 15:10]- Now therefore why tempt ye God, to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples, which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?*
  - f. *[Hebrews 8:6-13]- But now hath he obtained a more excellent ministry, by how much also he is the mediator of a better covenant, which was established upon better promises. For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second. For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah: Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord. And they shall not teach every man his neighbour, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for all shall know me, from the least to the greatest. For I will be merciful to their unrighteousness, and their sins and their iniquities will I remember no more. In that he saith, A new covenant, he*

*hath made the first old. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.*

- g. [Ezekiel 36:25-26]- Then will I sprinkle clean water upon you, and ye shall be clean: from all your filthiness, and from all your idols, will I cleanse you. A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh.*
  - h. [Jeremiah 31:33]- But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the LORD, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.*
  - i. [Jeremiah 32:40]- And I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their hearts, that they shall not depart from me.*
  - j. [Colossians 3:11]- Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all.*
  - k. [Colossians 2:9-10,15,17]- For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily. And ye are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power: And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it. Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ.*
  - l. [2 Kings 5:13]- And his servants came near, and spake unto him, and said, My father, if the prophet had bid thee do some great thing, wouldest thou not have done it? how much rather then, when he saith to thee, Wash, and be clean?*
  - m. [Matthew 11:30]- For my yoke is easy, and my burden is light.*
  - n. [Isaiah 40:31]- But they that wait upon the LORD shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint.*
4. It is a way of peace, free from fears and terrors of conscience that those meet with unavoidably, who seek salvation by works, for the 'law works wrath'.
- a. [Proverbs 3:17]- Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.*
  - b. [Romans 4:15]- Because the law worketh wrath: for where no law is, there is no transgression.*
  - c. [Hebrews 12:18,22]- For ye are not come unto the mount that might be touched, and that burned with fire, nor unto blackness, and darkness, and tempest, But ye are come unto mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels,*
  - d. [John 14:1]- Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me.*
  - e. [Mark 5:36]- As soon as Jesus heard the word that was spoken, he saith unto the ruler of the synagogue, Be not afraid, only believe.*
  - f. [Hebrews 10:19,22]- Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.*
  - g. [Romans 8:31-32]- What shall we then say to these things? If God be for us, who can be against us? He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?*
  - h. [1 John 2:1-2]- My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous: And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.*
  - i. [Philippians 4:6-7]- Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. And the*

*peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.*

- j. *[Psalm 121:5]- The LORD is thy keeper: the LORD is thy shade upon thy right hand.*
5. It is a way that is paved with love, like Solomon's chariot.
- a. *[Song of Solomon 3:10]- He made the pillars thereof of silver, the bottom thereof of gold, the covering of it of purple, the midst thereof being paved with love, for the daughters of Jerusalem.*
  - b. *[Psalm 26:3]- For thy lovingkindness is before mine eyes: and I have walked in thy truth.*
  - c. *[Romans 15:13]- Now the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that ye may abound in hope, through the power of the Holy Ghost.*
  - d. *[Isaiah 35:10]- And the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.*
  - e. *[Acts 9:31]- Then had the churches rest throughout all Judaea and Galilee and Samaria, and were edified; and walking in the fear of the Lord, and in the comfort of the Holy Ghost, were multiplied.*
  - f. *[Romans 8:15]- For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.*
  - g. *[Philippians 4:4-6]- Rejoice in the Lord always: and again I say, Rejoice. Let your moderation be known unto all men. The Lord is at hand. Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God.*
  - h. *[Song of Solomon 1:3]- Because of the savour of thy good ointments thy name is as ointment poured forth, therefore do the virgins love thee.*
  - i. *[Hosea 11:3-4]- I taught Ephraim also to go, taking them by their arms; but they knew not that I healed them. I drew them with cords of a man, with bands of love: and I was to them as they that take off the yoke on their jaws, and I laid meat unto them.*
  - j. *[2 Corinthians 5:15]- And that he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.*
  - k. *[2 Corinthians 7:1]- Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.*
  - l. *[Romans 12:1]- I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service.*
6. Our very moving, acting, walking in this way is a pleasure and delight.
- a. *[Romans 8:5]- For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit.*
  - b. *[Galatians 5:17,24]- For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would. And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts.*
  - c. *[John 4:34]- Jesus saith unto them, My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work.*
  - d. *[John 11:9,14,16,20]- Jesus answered, Are there not twelve hours in the day? If any man walk in the day, he stumbleth not, because he seeth the light of this world. Then said Jesus unto them plainly, Lazarus is dead. Then said Thomas, which is called*

*Didymus, unto his fellowdisciples, Let us also go, that we may die with him. Then Martha, as soon as she heard that Jesus was coming, went and met him: but Mary sat still in the house.*

F. It is a high-exalted way, above all other ways.

1. Proof texts.

- a. *[Habakkuk 3:18-19]- Yet I will rejoice in the LORD, I will joy in the God of my salvation. The LORD God is my strength, and he will make my feet like hinds' feet, and he will make me to walk upon mine high places. To the chief singer on my stringed instruments.*
- b. *[Ephesians 2:5-6]- Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;) And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:*

2. We live high here, for 'we live not after the flesh, but after the Spirit', and Christ in us with all His fullness.

- a. *[Romans 8:1-2]- There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.*
- b. *[Galatians 2:20]- I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.*
- c. *[Galatians 5:25]- If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.*
- d. *[2 Corinthians 6:16,18]- And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people. And will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be my sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty.*
- e. *[John 3:21]- But he that doeth truth cometh to the light, that his deeds may be made manifest, that they are wrought in God.*
- f. *[Galatians 5:23]- Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.*
- g. *[Philippians 1:11]- Being filled with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ, unto the glory and praise of God.*
- h. *[Romans 7:6]- But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.*

3. We are enabled to the most difficult duties, and nothing is too hard for us.

- a. *[Philippians 4:1,3]- Therefore, my brethren dearly beloved and longed for, my joy and crown, so stand fast in the Lord, my dearly beloved. And I intreat thee also, true yokefellow, help those women which laboured with me in the gospel, with Clement also, and with other my fellowlabourers, whose names are in the book of life.*
- b. *[Hebrews 11.40]- God having provided some better thing for us, that they without us should not be made perfect.*
- c. *[Mark 9:23]- Jesus said unto him, If thou canst believe, all things are possible to him that believeth.*

4. We walk in an honorable state with God, and on honorable terms - not as guilty creatures, to get our pardon by works; not as bond-servants, to earn our meat and drink; but as sons and heirs, walking towards the full possession of that happiness to which we have a title, and so we have much boldness in God's presence.

- a. *[Galatians 4:6-7]- And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father. Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ.*
  - b. *[Ephesians 2:19-20]- Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellowcitizens with the saints, and of the household of God; And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;*
  - c. *[Romans 6:17-18]- But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin, but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you. Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness.*
  - d. *[John 8:35-36]- And the servant abideth not in the house for ever: but the Son abideth ever. If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed.*
5. It is the way only of those that are honorable and precious in the eyes of the Lord, even His elect and redeemed ones, whose special privilege it is to walk therein: ‘No unclean beast goes there’.
- a. *[Isaiah 35:8-9]- And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called The way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it; but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein. No lion shall be there, nor any ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk there:*
  - b. *[John 6:44-46]- No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day. It is written in the prophets, And they shall be all taught of God. Every man therefore that hath heard, and hath learned of the Father, cometh unto me. Not that any man hath seen the Father, save he which is of God, he hath seen the Father.*
6. The preparing this way cost Christ very dear. It is a costly way.
- a. *[Hebrews 10:19-20]- Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, By a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh;*
  - b. *[1 Peter 3:18]- For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit:*
7. It is a good old way, wherein you may follow the footsteps of all the flock.
8. It is the way to perfection. It leads to such holiness which shall, in a while, be absolutely perfect.
- a. *[1 Corinthians 15:28]- And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all.*
  - b. *[John 4:14]- But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.*
  - c. *[1 Corinthians 15:49]- And as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.*
  - d. *[Romans 8:23]- And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body.*
  - e. *[2 Corinthians 5:7]- (For we walk by faith, not by sight:)*

*f. [Ephesians 4:13]- Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ:*